unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 27
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 10
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 10
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 12
**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 14
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
**Date:** 2020-02-20
**Version:** 0.12
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
**Date:** 2020-02-20
**Version:** 2.1.11
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

*Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit [http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/](http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/) or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](http://unfoldingword.org/utn).” You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).
If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.
# Table of Contents

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
- Ephesians ......................................................................................................................... 10
  - Introduction to Ephesians ............................................................................................ 11
  - Ephesians 1 .................................................................................................................... 13
  - Ephesians 2 .................................................................................................................... 39
  - Ephesians 3 .................................................................................................................... 63
  - Ephesians 4 .................................................................................................................... 85
  - Ephesians 5 .................................................................................................................... 119
  - Ephesians 6 .................................................................................................................... 153

## unfoldingWord® Translation Academy ........................................................................... 178
- Abstract Nouns .................................................................................................................. 179
- Active or Passive ................................................................................................................. 181
- Apostrophe ......................................................................................................................... 184
- Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information ..................................................................... 186
- Double Negatives ................................................................................................................. 189
- Doublet ................................................................................................................................. 191
- Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ .............................................................................................. 193
- Forms of You ......................................................................................................................... 195
- How to Translate Names ...................................................................................................... 196
- Hyperbole ............................................................................................................................. 200
- Idiom ................................................................................................................................ 204
- Inclusive and Exclusive “We” ........................................................................................... 206
- Irony .................................................................................................................................. 208
- Litotes ................................................................................................................................ 211
- Merism ................................................................................................................................. 213
- Metaphor .............................................................................................................................. 215
- Metonymy ............................................................................................................................ 221
- Parallelism ............................................................................................................................. 223
- Predictive Past ....................................................................................................................... 226
- Simile .................................................................................................................................. 228
- Symbolic Action ................................................................................................................... 231
- Synecdoche .......................................................................................................................... 233
- Textual Variants ................................................................................................................... 235
- Translating Son and Father ................................................................................................. 237
- When Masculine Words Include Women ............................................................................. 239

## unfoldingWord® Translation Words .............................................................................. 241
- admonish, warned, aware ................................................................................................. 242
- adoption, adopt, adopted .................................................................................................... 243
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels ....................................................... 244
- age, aged ............................................................................................................................... 245
- ambassador, representative ............................................................................................... 246
- amen, truly ............................................................................................................................ 247
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather ............................................................. 248
apostle, apostleship

armor, armory

asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

authority

baptize, baptized, baptism

bear, bearer, carry

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

beloved

bind, bond, bound

blameless

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

bless, blessed, blessing

blood

boast, boastful

body

bold, boldness, emboldened

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

breastplate, breastpiece

brother

call, call out

children, child, offspring

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Christ, Messiah

church, Church

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

citizen, citizenship

clean, wash

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

command, commandment

commit, committed, commitment

confidence, confident

cornerstone

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

covenant

create, created, creation, creator

cross

darkness

day

deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

die, dead, deadly, death,

discipline, self-discipline

disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

document, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge

dominion

drunk, drunkard
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>earth, earthen, earthly</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envy, covet</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephesus, Ephesian</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eternity, everlasting, eternal, fore</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evangalist</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evil, wicked, unpleasant</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhort, exhortation</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faith</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family, household</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear, afraid, dread</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fellowship</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filled with the Holy Spirit</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flesh</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fool, foolish, folly</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>found, founder, foundation</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit, fruitful, unfruitful</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generation</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentile</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gift</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glory, glorious, glorify</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God the Father, heavenly Father, Father</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatry</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good news, gospel</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grace, gracious</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard, harden, hardness</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heir</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holy, holiness, unholy, sacred</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honor</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope, hoped</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>household</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humble, humbled, humility</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imitate, imitator</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inherit, inheritance, heir</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel, Israelites</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind [NOT kindness]</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kingdom</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labor, laborer, work, hard work</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life, live, living, alive</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loins, waist</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lord, Lord, master, sir</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love, beloved</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lust, lustful, passions, desires</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manager, steward, stewardship</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>member, body parts</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mercy, merciful</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>might, mighty, mighty works</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiply, multiplied, multiplication</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mystery, hidden truth</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obey, obedient</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on high, in the highest</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partial, partiality</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pastor</td>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patient, patience, impatient</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul, Saul</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace, peaceful, peacemakers</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfect, perfected, perfection, complete</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persevere, perseverance</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pledge, pledged</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possess, possessed, possession, dispossess</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power, powerful, powerfully</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise, praised, praiseworthy</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pray, prayer</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>predestine, predestined</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prison, prisoner, imprison</td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promise, promised</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provoke, provoked, provocation</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psalm</td>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quench, quenched, unquenchable</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rebuke</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redeem, redeemer, redemption</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reveal, revealed, revelation</td>
<td>427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revere, revered, reverence, reverent</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right hand</td>
<td>429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...</td>
<td>430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule, ruler, ruling, overrules</td>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrifice, sacrifices, offering</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saint</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanctify, sanctification</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satan, devil, evil one</td>
<td>437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save, saved, safe, salvation</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Savior, savior</td>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seal, sealed, unsealed</td>
<td>442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send, sent, send out</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women</td>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication</td>
<td>446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach</td>
<td>447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shield</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sin, sinful, sinner, sinning</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Son of God, the Son</td>
<td>454</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soul, self</td>
<td>456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spirit, spiritual</td>
<td>457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strength, strengthen, strong</td>
<td>459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject, be subject to, subjection</td>
<td>461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword, swordsmen</td>
<td>462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach, teaching, untaught</td>
<td>463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teacher, Teacher</td>
<td>464</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temple</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test, tested, testing, testing in the fire</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness</td>
<td>468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time, untimely, date</td>
<td>470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to minister, ministry</td>
<td>471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tremble, stagger</td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trespass</td>
<td>473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribulation, distresses, trouble</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true, truth</td>
<td>475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tychicus</td>
<td>478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand, understanding, thinking</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vain, vanity</td>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk, walked</td>
<td>481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
will of God .................................................. 483
wine, wineskin, new wine ................................ 484
wise, wisdom .............................................. 485
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ... .................................................. 486
work, works, deeds ........................................ 488
world, worldly .............................................. 489
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless ................. 490
wrath, fury .................................................. 491

Contributors .............................................. 492
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors .......................................................... 492
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors .......................................................... 498
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors .......................................................... 499
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors .............................................. 499
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors .................................................. 500
Introduction to Ephesians

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Ephesians

1. Greeting and prayer for the spiritual blessings in Christ (1:1-23)
2. Sin and salvation (2:1-10)
3. Unity and peace (2:11-22)
4. Mystery of Christ in you, made known (3:1-13)
5. Prayer for riches of his glory to make them strong (3:14-21)
6. Unity of the Spirit, building up the Body of Christ (4:1-16)
7. New life (4:17-32)
8. Imitators of God (5:1-21)
9. Wives and husbands; children and parents; slaves and masters (5:22-6:9)
10. Armor of God (6:10-20)
11. Final greeting (6:21-24)

Who wrote the Book of Ephesians?

Paul wrote Ephesians. Paul was from the city of Tarsus. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he became a Christian, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus.

The Apostle Paul helped start the church in Ephesus on one of his trips. He also lived in Ephesus for a year and a half and helped the believers there. Paul probably wrote this letter while he was in prison in Rome.

What is the Book of Ephesians about?

Paul wrote this letter to the Christians in Ephesus to explain God’s love for them in Christ Jesus. He described the blessings that God was giving them because they were now united with Christ. He explained that all believers are united together, whether Jew or Gentile. Paul also wanted to encourage them to live in a way that pleases God.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “Ephesians.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “Paul’s Letter to the Church in Ephesus” or “A Letter to the Christians in Ephesus.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was the “hidden truth” in the Book of Ephesians?

The expression translated in the ULT as “hidden truth” or “hidden” occurs six times. By it Paul always meant something that God had to reveal to human beings because they could not know it on their own. It always referred to something about how God planned to save mankind. Sometimes it was about his plan to cause peace between himself and mankind. Sometimes it was about his plan to unite Jews and Gentiles through Christ. Gentiles are now able to benefit from the promises of Christ as equals with the Jews.

What did Paul say about salvation and righteous living?

Paul said much about salvation and righteous living in this letter and in many of his letters. He said that God has been very kind and saved Christians because they believe in Jesus. Therefore, after they become Christians, they
should live in a righteous way to show that they have faith in Christ. (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

**Part 3: Important Translation Issues**

**Singular and plural “you”**

In this book, the word “I” refers to Paul. The word “you” is almost always plural and refers to the believers who may read this letter. The three exceptions to this are: 5:14, 6:2, and 6:3. (See: Forms of You)

**What did Paul mean by the “new self” or the “new man”?**

When Paul spoke of the “new self” or the “new man,” he meant the new nature that a believer receives from the Holy Spirit. This new nature was created in God’s image (See: 4:24). The phrase “new man” is also used for God causing peace between Jews and Gentiles. God brought them together as one people that belong to him (See: 2:15).

**How are the ideas of “holy” and “sanctify” represented in Ephesians in the ULT?**

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, the ULT uses the following principles:

- Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies moral holiness. Especially important for understanding the gospel is the use of “holy” to express the fact that God views Christians as sinless because they are united to Jesus Christ. Another use of “holy” is to express the idea that God is perfect and faultless. A third use is to express the idea that Christians are to conduct themselves in a blameless, faultless manner in life. In these cases, the ULT uses “holy,” “holy God,” “holy ones,” or “holy people.” (See: 1:1, 4)
- Sometimes the meaning in a passage indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULT uses “believer” or “believers.”
- Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULT uses “set apart,” “dedicated to,” or “reserved for.” (See: 3:5)

The UST will often be helpful as translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions.

**What did Paul mean by the expression “in Christ,” “in the Lord,” etc.?**

This kind of expression occurs in 1:1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 20; 2:6, 7, 10, 13, 15, 16, 18, 21, 22; 3:5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 21; 4:1, 17, 21, 32; 5:8, 18, 19; 6:1, 10, 18, 21. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union with Christ and the believers. Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

**What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Ephesians?**

- “in Ephesus” (1:1). Some early manuscripts do not include this expression, but it is probably in the original letter. The ULT, UST, and many modern versions include it.
- “because we are members of his body” (5:30). Most modern versions, including the ULT and UST, read in this way. Some older versions read, “because we are members of his body and of his bones.” Translators might decide to choose the second reading if other versions in their area have it that way. If translators choose the second reading, they should put the additional words inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that they are probably not original to the Book of Ephesians.

(See: Textual Variants)
Ephesians 1

Ephesians 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

“I pray”

Paul structures part of this chapter like a prayer of praise to God. But Paul is not just talking to God. He is teaching the church in Ephesus. He also tells the Ephesians how he is praying for them.

Special concepts in this chapter

Predestination

Many scholars believe this chapter teaches on a subject known as “predestination.” This is related to the biblical concept of “predestine.” Some scholars take this to indicate that God has, from before the foundation of the world, chosen some people to eternally save. Christians have different views on what the Bible teaches on this subject. So translators need to take extra care when translating this chapter. (See: predestine, predestined)
Ephesians 1:1

**General Information:**

Paul names himself as the writer of this letter to the believers at the church at Ephesus. Except where noted, all instances of “you” and “your” refers to the Ephesian believers as well as all believers and so are plural. (See: *Forms of You*)

Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus (ULT)

I am Paul, an apostle of the Messiah Jesus (UST)

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and its intended audience. Alternate translation: “I, Paul, an apostle...write this letter to you, God's holy people Ephesus”

who are...and faithful in Christ Jesus (ULT)

“In Christ Jesus” and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him. (See: *Metaphor*)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of Christ Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- of God
- saints
- an apostle
- the will of God
- faithful
- of Christ
- Christ
- in Christ Jesus
- Paul
- Ephesus

**Translation Words - UST**

- of the Messiah Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- God
- people whom God has set apart for himself
- an apostle
- that is what God wanted
- who are loyal
- of the Messiah
- the Messiah
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- I am Paul
- Ephesus, Ephesian
Ephesians 1:2

Grace to you and peace (ULT)
will be kind to you and give you a peaceful spirit (UST)

This is a common greeting and blessing that Paul often uses in his letters.

Translation Words - ULT

• Grace
• Jesus Christ
• the Lord
• God
• God...Father
• Christ
• peace

Translation Words - UST

• will be kind
• Jesus our Messiah
• and Lord
• I pray that God
• I pray that God...Father
• our Messiah
• give...a peaceful spirit

ULT
2 Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

UST
2 I pray that God our Father and Jesus our Messiah and Lord will be kind to you and give you a peaceful spirit.
Ephesians 1:3

**General Information:**
In this book, unless otherwise stated, the words “us” and “we” refer to Paul, the believers in Ephesus, as well as all believers. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

**Connecting Statement:**
Paul opens his letter by talking about the believers’ position and their safety before God.

May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised (ULT)
Praise God, the Father of our Lord Jesus the Messiah (UST)

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: “Let us praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ” (See: Active or Passive)

the...has blessed us (ULT)
God...has blessed us (UST)

“for God has blessed us”

every spiritual blessing (ULT)
every kind of spiritual blessing (UST)

“every blessing coming from the Spirit of God”

with...the heavenly places (ULT)
with...that comes from heaven (UST)

“in the supernatural world.” The word “heavenly” refers to the place where God is.

in Christ (ULT)
because we belong to the Messiah (UST)

Possible meanings 1) the phrase “in Christ” refers to what Christ has done. Alternate translation: “through Christ” or “through what Christ has done” or 2) “in Christ” is a metaphor referring to our close relationship with Christ. Alternate translation: “by uniting us with Christ” or “because we are united with Christ” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- heavenly places
- Jesus Christ
- May...be praised
- has blessed
- blessing
- of...Lord
- God
- spiritual
• God and Father
• Christ
• Christ
• in Christ

Translation Words - UST

• that comes from heaven
• Jesus the Messiah
• Praise
• has blessed
• blessing
• Lord
• God
• spiritual
• God...the Father
• the Messiah
• the Messiah
• because we belong to the Messiah
Ephesians 1:4

**holy and blameless (ULT)**

Paul uses two similar words to emphasize moral goodness. (See: *Doublet*)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- love
- holy
- blameless
- of the world
- he chose
- the beginning
- just as
- the beginning of the world

**Translation Words - UST**

- Because God loves us
- set...apart for God
- to live faultlessly
- the world
- he chose
- God created
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if
- God created the world

**ULT**

4 *just as he chose* us in him from *the beginning of the world*, that we may be *holy* and *blameless* before him. In *love*

**UST**

4 Before *God created the world he chose* us to belong to the Messiah, who *set* us *apart* for *God* *to live* *faultlessly* before him. *Because God loves us,*
Ephesians 1:5

General Information:

The words “his,” “He,” and “he” refer to God.

he chose us beforehand for adoption (ULT)
he planned long ago to adopt us (UST)

The word “us” refers to Paul, the Ephesian church, and all believers in Christ. Alternate translation: “God planned long ago to adopt us” (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

he chose us beforehand (ULT)
he planned long ago...us (UST)

“God chose us ahead of time” or “God chose us long ago”

for adoption (ULT)
to adopt (UST)

Here “adoption” refers to becoming part of God’s family. Here the word “sons” refers to males and females. Alternate translation: “to be adopted as his children” (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

through Jesus Christ (ULT)
by means of Jesus the Messiah (UST)

God brought believers into his family by the work of Jesus Christ.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus Christ
- adoption
- good pleasure
- Christ
- he chose...beforehand

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus the Messiah
- to adopt
- It pleased him to do this
- the Messiah
- he planned long ago
Ephesians 1:6

he has freely given us in the Beloved One (ULT)
he blessed us by means of his Son whom he loves (UST)

“he has kindly given to us by means of the One he loves”

the Beloved One (ULT)
his Son whom he loves (UST)

“the One he loves, Jesus Christ” or “his Son, whom he loves”

Translation Words - ULT

• of…grace
• Beloved One
• of the glory
• the praise

Translation Words - UST

• for being so…kind to us, far beyond what we could deserve
• his Son whom he loves
• amazingly
• we now praise God
Ephesians 1:7

the riches of his grace (ULT)  
that is how abundantly and generously kind he is (UST)

Paul speaks of God’s grace as if it were material wealth. Alternate translation: “greatness of God’s grace” or “abundance of God’s grace” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- of...grace  
- of sins  
- forgiveness  
- redemption  
- blood

Translation Words - UST

- kind  
- our sins  
- That is...God forgave us  
- paid the price for our sin  
- When Jesus died in our place...when he died for us

ULT

7 in whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace,

UST

7 When Jesus died in our place he paid the price for our sin. That is, when he died for us, God forgave us our sins, because that is how abundantly and generously kind he is.
Ephesians 1:8

which he lavished upon us (ULT)
While being extremely kind to us (UST)

“He gave us this great amount of grace” or “He was extremely kind to us”

with all wisdom and understanding (ULT)
he was also completely wise and knowledgeable (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “because he has all wisdom and understanding” 2) “so that we might have great wisdom and understanding”

Translation Words - ULT

• wisdom
• he lavished
• understanding

Translation Words - UST

• wise
• While being extremely kind
• knowledgeable

ULT
8 which he lavished upon us with all wisdom and understanding.

UST
8 While being extremely kind to us he was also completely wise and knowledgeable.
Ephesians 1:9

His...according to...good pleasure (ULT)
his...that...wanted to do (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “because he wanted to make it known to us” or 2) “which was what he wanted.”

Which he had planned in him (ULT)
a plan which he determined with the Messiah (UST)

“He demonstrated this purpose in Christ”

In him (ULT)
with the Messiah (UST)

“by means of Christ”

Translation Words - ULT

• of...his...will
• mystery
• He made known

Translation Words - UST

• his plan
• secret
• God has now revealed
Ephesians 1:10

resulting in a plan (ULT)
In this plan (UST)

A new sentence can be started here. Alternate translation: “He did this with a view to a plan” or “He did this, thinking about a plan”

for the fullness of time (ULT)
when the time was just right (UST)

“for when the time is right” or “for the time that he has appointed”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- Christ
- in Christ
- time
- a plan
- earth

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- Messiah...himself
- the Messiah...under himself
- time
- this plan
- earth

ULT
10 resulting in a plan for the fullness of time, to bring all things together in Christ, the things in heaven and the things on earth, in him,

UST
10 In this plan, when the time was just right, the Messiah would unite all things under himself, so that all things in heaven and all things on earth would belong to the Messiah.
Ephesians 1:11

we were...allotted as a possession (ULT)
God has...claimed us as his own (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God chose us to be heirs” (See: Active or Passive)

We were decided on beforehand (ULT)
He planned to do this long ago (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God chose us ahead of time” or “God chose us long ago” (See: Active or Passive)

we were...allotted as a possession. We were decided on beforehand (ULT)
God has...claimed us as his own. He planned to do this long ago (UST)

By means of these pronouns “we,” Paul is referring to himself and the other Jewish Christians, those who trusted Christ before the Ephesian believers did. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

Translation Words - ULT

• we were...allotted as a possession
• his will
• We were decided on beforehand
• counsel

Translation Words - UST

• God has...claimed us as his own
• he...wishes to do
• He planned to do this long ago
• wishes to do

ULT
11 In whom we were also allotted as a possession. We were decided on beforehand according to the purpose of him who works out everything according to the counsel of his will.

UST
11 Because of what the Messiah has done, God has also claimed us as his own. He planned to do this long ago, and he always does exactly what he wishes to do.
Ephesians 1:12

so that we...would be (ULT)
In God's plan we Jews...would live (UST)

Again, the word "we" refers to the Jewish believers who first heard the good news, not the believers at Ephesus. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

so that we...would be for the praise of his glory (ULT)
In God's plan we Jews...would live to praise God because he is so great (UST)

“so that we would live to praise him for his glory”

so that we...would be for the praise of his glory (ULT)
In God's plan we Jews...would live to praise God because he is so great (UST)

Once again, the pronouns “we” refer to Paul and the other Jewish believers, not to the Ephesian believers. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

Translation Words - UST

• first to trust
• because...is so great
• Messiah
• in the Messiah
• praise God
Ephesians 1:13

General Information:

Paul has been speaking in the previous two verses about himself and the other Jewish believers, but now he begins speaking about the Ephesian believers.

the word of truth (ULT)
the true message (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “the message about the truth” or 2) “the true message.”

you were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit (ULT)
God marked you...by giving you the Holy Spirit, as he had promised to do (UST)

Wax was placed on a letter and stamped with a symbol representing the person who wrote the letter. Paul uses this custom as a picture to show how God has used the Holy Spirit to assure us that we belong to him. Alternate translation: “God has sealed you with the Holy Spirit that he promised” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• salvation
• Holy
• promised Holy Spirit
• truth
• gospel
• you believed
• promised
• you were sealed

Translation Words - UST

• how God saves
• Holy
• Holy Spirit, as he had promised to do
• true
• good news
• you believed
• as he had promised to do
• God marked you...by giving you
Ephesians 1:14

the guarantee of our inheritance (ULT)
like a down-payment that proves that God will also give us everything else that he has promised (UST)

Receiving what God has promised is spoken of as though one inherits property or wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: “the guarantee that we will receive what God has promised” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• of...inheritance
• the deliverance
• of...glory
• full possession
• the guarantee
• the praise

Translation Words - UST

• everything else that he has promised
• he will release
• because...is so great
• everything that he has for us
• like a down-payment that proves that God will also give
• Praise God

ULT
14 who is the guarantee of our inheritance until the deliverance of the full possession, to the praise of his glory.

UST
14 The Holy Spirit is like a down-payment that proves that God will also give us everything else that he has promised, at that time when he will release everything that he has for us. Praise God because he is so great!
Ephesians 1:15

Connecting Statement:

Paul prays for the Ephesian believers and praises God for the power that believers have through Christ.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- love
- saints
- your faith
- in the Lord Jesus

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- love, beloved
- believers
- trust
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
Ephesians 1:16

I have not stopped giving thanks (ULT)
I thank God...constantly (UST)

Paul uses “not stopped” to emphasize that he continues to thank God. Alternate translation: “I continue to thank God” (See: Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT
  • in...prayers

Translation Words - UST
  • pray to him
Ephesians 1:17

a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him (ULT)
his Spirit to make you wise and to reveal God to you so that you can continually know him better (UST)

“spiritual wisdom to understand his revelation”

Translation Words - ULT

- revelation
- Jesus Christ
- Lord
- God
- of wisdom
- a spirit
- glory
- the Father
- Christ
- the knowledge

Translation Words - UST

- to reveal God to you
- Jesus the Messiah
- Lord
- God
- to make you wise
- his Spirit
- glorious
- the...Father
- the Messiah
- you can continually know...better
Ephesians 1:18

that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened (ULT)
I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person’s mind. The phrase “eyes of your heart” is a metaphor for one’s ability to gain understanding. Alternate translation: “that you may gain understanding and be enlightened” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened (ULT)
I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are (UST)

This may be stated in the active tense. Alternate translation: that God may enlighten your heart” or “that God may enlighten your understanding” (See: Active or Passive)

that...may be enlightened (ULT)
I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are (UST)

“made to see”

inheritance (ULT)
are the things...promises to give to us (UST)

Receiving what God has promised believers, is spoken of as if one were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: Metaphor)

among the saints (ULT)
and to all the believers (UST)

“all those whom he has set apart for himself” or “all those who belong completely to him”

Translation Words - ULT

• has called you
• inheritance
• heart
• saints
• glorious
• hope
• may know

Translation Words - UST

• because...has called us to be his people
• are the things...promises to give to us
• I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are
• and to all the believers
wonderful
the wonderful plan that God has for us
may know
Ephesians 1:19

the incomparable greatness of his power (ULT)
And I pray that you will know...how exceedingly powerfully God acts (UST)

God's power is far beyond all other power.

toward us who believe (ULT)
for us who believe in the Messiah (UST)

“for us who believe”

of his...the working of the force...strength (ULT)
how exceedingly powerfully...God...acts...just as...powerfully...strong...for us (UST)

“his great power that is at work for us”

Translation Words - ULT

• power
• believe
• force
• strength

Translation Words - UST

• how exceedingly powerfully...acts
• who believe in the Messiah
• powerfully
• strong
Ephesians 1:20

when he raised him (ULT)
when he caused...to become alive again after he died (UST)

“made him alive again”

from the dead (ULT)
when he caused...to become alive again after he died (UST)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places (ULT)
raised him to the place of highest honor in heaven (UST)

The person who sits “at the right hand” of a king sits at his right side and rules with all the authority of the king at whose right hand or side he sits. This is a metonym of location that represents the authority that the person in that location possesses. Alternate translation: “gave him all authority to rule from heaven” (See: Metonymy)

seated him at his right hand (ULT)
raised him to the place of highest honor (UST)

To sit at the “right hand of God” is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “seated him in the place of honor and authority beside him” (See: Symbolic Action)

in...the heavenly places (ULT)
for...heaven (UST)

“in the supernatural world.” The word “heavenly” refers to the place where God is. See how you translated this in Ephesians 1:3.

Translation Words - ULT

- heavenly places
- right hand
- Christ
- in Christ
- the dead
- when he raised

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- the place of highest honor
- Messiah...Messiah
- for the Messiah...the Messiah
- when he caused...to become alive again after he died
- when he caused...to become alive again after he died
Ephesians 1:21

far above all rule and authority and power and dominion

These are different terms for the ranks of supernatural beings, both angelic and demonic. Alternate translation: “far above all types of supernatural beings”

every name that is named (ULT)
over every being that people revere (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: Possible meanings are 1) “every name that man gives” or 2) “every name that God gives” (See: Active or Passive)

name (ULT)
being that people revere (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) title or 2) position of authority. (See: Metonymy)

in this age (ULT)
now (UST)

“at this time”

in...age...age to come (ULT)
now...forever (UST)

“in the future”

Translation Words - ULT

- dominion
- power
- authority
- name that is named
- rule
- age

Translation Words - UST

- on every level of authority
- powerful spirit
- being that people revere
- ruler
- now
Ephesians 1:22

He put...all things...under his feet (ULT)
God has put everything under the rule of the Messiah (UST)

Here “feet” represents Christ’s lordship, authority, and power.
Alternate translation: “all things under Christ’s power” (See: Metonymy)

as head over all things (ULT)
the ruler over everything (UST)

Here “head” refers to the leader or the one who is in charge.
Alternate translation: “ruler over all things” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- church
- as head
- He put

Translation Words - UST

- among all believers everywhere
- the ruler
- God has put
Ephesians 1:23

his body (ULT)
the Messiah as the parts of a person’s body (UST)

Just as with a human body, the head (verse 22) rules all things pertaining to its body, so Christ is the head of the church body. (See: Metaphor)

body...is filled by the one who fills all in all (ULT)

“Christ fills the church with his life and power just as he gives life to all things”

Translation Words - ULT
- body

Translation Words - UST
- as the parts of a person's body

ULT
23 which is his body that is filled by the one who fills all in all.
1:15 [2] Some manuscripts do not include love, but the best manuscripts include it.

UST
23 We believers relate to the Messiah as the parts of a person's body relate to its head. He fills all believers, just as he fills everything everywhere.
Ephesians 2

Ephesians 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter focuses on a Christian's life before coming to believe in Jesus. Paul then uses this information to explain how a person's former way of living is distinct from a Christian's new identity “in Christ.” (See: faith)

Special concepts in this chapter

One body

Paul teaches about the church in this chapter. The church is made of two different groups of people (Jews and Gentiles). They are now one group or “body.” The church is also known as the body of Christ. Jews and Gentiles are united in Christ.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

“Dead in trespasses and sins”

Paul teaches that those who are not Christians are “dead” in their sin. Sin binds or enslaves them. This makes them spiritually “dead.” Paul writes that God makes Christians alive in Christ. (See: die, dead, deadly, death, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and faith and Metaphor)

Descriptions of worldly living

Paul uses many different ways to describe how non-Christians act. They “lived according to the ways of this world” and are “living according to the ruler of the authorities of the air,” “fulfilling the evil desires of our sinful nature,” and “carrying out the desires of the body and of the mind.”

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“It is the gift of God”

Some scholars believe “it” here refers to being saved. Other scholars believe that it is faith that is the gift of God. Because of how the Greek tenses agree, “it” here more likely refers to all of being saved by God's grace through faith.

Flesh

This is a complex issue. “Flesh” is possibly a metaphor for a person's sinful nature. The phrase “Gentiles in the flesh” indicates the Ephesians once lived without any concern for God. “Flesh” is also used in this verse to refer to the physical part of man. (See: flesh)
Ephesians 2:1

Connecting Statement:
Paul reminds the believers of their past and the way they now are before God.

As for you, you were dead in your trespasses and sins (ULT)
you were spiritually dead and unable to stop sinning (UST)

This shows how sinful people are unable to obey God in the same way a dead person is unable to respond physically. (See: Metaphor)

in your trespasses and sins (ULT) and unable to stop sinning (UST)

The words “trespasses” and “sins” have similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize the greatness of the people’s sin. (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• in...trespasses
• sins
• dead

Translation Words - UST

• and unable to stop sinning
• and unable to stop sinning
• spiritually dead
Ephesians 2:2

according to the ways of this world (ULT)
guided by the spirit of this world (UST)

The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. Alternate translation: “according to the values of people living in the world” or “following the principles of this present world” (See: Metonymy)

the...of...world...ruler of the authorities...air (ULT)
the spirit of...ruler of the evil spirits who control the authorities of this world (UST)

This refers to the devil or Satan.

the spirit that is working

“the spirit of Satan, who is working”

Translation Words - ULT

• sons
• of...world
• authorities
• spirit
• ruler
• disobedience
• you...walked
• ways

Translation Words - UST

• the people
• world
• evil spirits who control the authorities of this world
• This ruler is Satan
• ruler
• who disobey God
• You...live
• the spirit
We all once lived among these as well, in the evil desires of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the body and of the mind. We were by nature children of wrath, just like everyone else.

All of us used to live in the same way as these people who disobey God; we did the evil things that we desired, things that would bring pleasure to our bodies and our minds. We deserved for God to be very angry with us, just as he is with the other people.

The words “body” and “mind” represent the entire person. (See: Metonymy)

children...of wrath (ULT)
We deserved for God to be very angry with us...We deserved for God to be very angry with us (UST)
people with whom God is angry (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• of...flesh
• body (2)
• of wrath
• children
• evil desires
• mind
• just like

Translation Words - UST

• did the evil things
• to our bodies (2)
• We deserved for God to be very angry with us
• We deserved for God to be very angry with us
• that we desired
• our minds
• just as he is with
Ephesians 2:4

**But God is rich in mercy (ULT)**
**God is very merciful (UST)**

“God is abundant in mercy” or “God is very kind to us”

**because of his great love with which he loved us (ULT)**

“because of his great love for us” or “because he loves us very much”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- love
- he loved
- But God
- mercy

**Translation Words - UST**

- love, beloved
- he loves
- God
- merciful

**ULT**

4 But God is rich in mercy because of his great love with which he loved us.

**UST**

4 But God is very merciful to us, because he loves us very much.
Ephesians 2:5

by grace you have been saved (ULT)
God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve when he saved you from being spiritually dead (UST)

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: “God saved us because of his great kindness toward us” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- saved
- by grace
- in trespasses
- Christ
- in Christ
- dead

Translation Words - UST

- when he saved you from being spiritually dead
- God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve
- and constantly sinning
- the Messiah
- to the Messiah
- spiritually dead

ULT
5 Even while we were dead in trespasses, he made us alive together in Christ—by grace you have been saved—

UST
5 God loved us so much that even when we were spiritually dead and constantly sinning, he made us alive by joining us to the Messiah. Remember: God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve when he saved you from being spiritually dead.
Ephesians 2:6

raised up with him (ULT)

it was like he raised us up from our graves along with Jesus and made us alive again with him (UST)

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Possible meanings are 1) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, God has already given Paul and the believers in Ephesus new spiritual life. Alternate translation: “God has given us new life because we belong to Christ” or 2) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, the believers in Ephesus can know that after they die they will live with Christ, and Paul can speak of the believers living again as if it has already happened. Alternate translation: “We can be sure that God will give us life as he has caused Christ to come alive again” (See: Predictive Past and Idiom)

in the heavenly places (ULT)
in heaven (UST)

“in the supernatural world.” The word “heavenly” refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in Ephesians 1:3.

in...Christ Jesus (ULT)
the Messiah Jesus in (UST)

“In Christ Jesus” and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

Translation Words - ULT

- heavenly places
- Jesus
- Christ
- in Christ Jesus
- raised us up with him

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- Jesus
- the Messiah
- with the Messiah Jesus
- it was like he raised us up from our graves along with Jesus and made us alive again with him
Ephesians 2:7

in the ages to come

“in the future”

Translation Words - ULT

- of...grace
- Jesus
- Christ
- in Christ Jesus
- his kindness
- ages

Translation Words - UST

- gracious
- Jesus
- the Messiah
- by joining us to the Messiah Jesus
- being kind
- all future times

ULT

7 so that in the ages to come he might show the immeasurably great riches of his grace in his kindness toward us in Christ Jesus.

UST

7 He did that to show to everyone in all future times how exceedingly gracious he is in being kind to us by joining us to the Messiah Jesus.
Ephesians 2:8

For by grace you have been saved through faith (ULT)

God's kindness to us is the reason he made it possible for us to be saved from judgment if we simply trust in Jesus. Alternate translation: “God saved you by grace because of your faith in him” (See: Active or Passive)

this did not (ULT)
You have not saved yourselves (UST)

The word “this” refers back to “by grace you have been saved by faith.”

Translation Words - ULT

- saved
- grace
- it is the gift
- of God
- faith

Translation Words - UST

- when he saved you from being spiritually dead
- God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve
- this is a gift
- from God
- you trust in Jesus
Ephesians 2:9

not from works, so that no one may boast (ULT)
a gift that no one can earn, so no one can boast and say that he has saved himself (UST)

You may want to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Salvation does not come from works, so that no one may boast” or “God does not save a person because of what that person does, so no one can boast and say that he earned his salvation”

Translation Words - ULT

• works
• may boast

Translation Words - UST

• a gift that no one can earn
• can boast and say that he has saved himself
Ephesians 2:10

in Christ Jesus (ULT)
through the Messiah Jesus (UST)

“In Christ Jesus” and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

in...we would walk...them (ULT)
through...us to do (UST)

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Here “in them” refers to the “good deeds.” Alternate translation: “we would always and continually do those good deeds.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- God
- works
- good
- Christ
- in Christ Jesus
- we would walk
- created

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God
- things
- good
- the Messiah
- through the Messiah Jesus
- us to do
- he has created us as new people

ULT

10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus for good works that God planned long ago, so that we would walk in them.

UST

10 So God is making us what he wants us to be; through the Messiah Jesus he has created us as new people to do good things—things that God had previously prepared for us to do.
Ephesians 2:11

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul reminds these believers that God has now made Gentiles and Jews into one body through Christ and his cross.

**Gentiles in the flesh (ULT)**
**who are non-Jewish people according to physical descent did not belong to God's people (UST)**

This refers to people who were not born Jewish. (See: Metaphor)

**uncircumcised (ULT)**
**uncircumcised (UST)**

Non-Jewish people were not circumcised as babies and thus the Jews considered them people who do not follow any of God's laws. Alternate translation: “uncircumcised pagans” (See: Metonymy)

**circumcised (ULT)**
**the circumcised (UST)**

This was another term for Jewish people because all male infants were circumcised. Alternate translation: “circumcised people” (See: Metonymy)

**in...those called “circumcised...the flesh, performed by human hands (ULT)**
**according to physical descent...They call themselves “the circumcised.” By this they mean that they, not you, are God’s people, although circumcision is something that humans do...that only changes the body (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) “Jews, who are circumcised by humans” or 2) “Jews, who circumcise the physical body.”

**by those called (ULT)**

This can be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: “by what people call” or “by those whom people call” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- called
- called
- the flesh
- the flesh
- uncircumcised
- circumcised
- Gentiles
- performed by human hands

**Translation Words - UST**

- The Jews insulted you by calling you
- They call themselves
• according to physical descent
• that only changes the body
• uncircumcised
• the circumcised
• who are non-Jewish people...did not belong to God's people
• something that humans do
Ephesians 2:12

apart from Christ (ULT)
apart from the Messiah (UST)

“unbelievers”

strangers to the covenants of the promise (ULT)
You did not share in...the things that God promised in his agreements with them (UST)

Paul speaks to the Gentile believers as if they had been foreigners, kept out of the land of God's covenant and promise. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- world
- covenants
- of Israel
- Christ
- promise
- hope
- time
- community

Translation Words - UST

- in this world
- in his agreements with them
- of Israel
- the Messiah
- the things that God promised
- You did not confidently expect that God would save you
- at...time
- people

ULT

12 For at that time you were apart from Christ, excluded from the community of Israel, and strangers to the covenants of the promise, having no hope and without God in the world.

UST

12 Remember that, at that time, you were apart from the Messiah. You were foreigners to the people of Israel. You did not share in the things that God promised in his agreements with them. You did not confidently expect that God would save you. No, you were living in this world completely without God.
Ephesians 2:13

But now in Christ Jesus (ULT)
But now because you have trusted in the Messiah Jesus (UST)

Paul is marking a contrast between the Ephesians before they believed in Christ and after they believed in Christ.

you who once were far away have been brought near by the blood of Christ (ULT)

Not belonging to God due to sin is spoken of as being far away from God. Belonging to God because of the blood of Christ is spoken of as being brought near to God. Alternate translation: “you who once did not belong to God now belong to God because of the blood of Christ” (See: Metaphor)

by the blood of Christ (ULT)
This was possible because the Messiah died on the cross for you (UST)

The blood of Christ is a metonym for his death. Alternate translation: “by Christ's death” or “when Christ died for us” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- died on the cross for you
- the Messiah
- Messiah
- because you have trusted in the Messiah Jesus
Ephesians 2:14

Ult

“Jesus gives us his peace”

Our peace (ULT)

Jews and non-Jews to live peacefully with each other (UST)

The word “our” refers to Paul and his readers and so is inclusive. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

He has made the two one (ULT)

He made the two separate groups into one group (UST)

“He made the Jews and Gentiles one”

In his flesh (ULT)

When he died for all of us (UST)

The words “his flesh,” his physical body, are a metonym for his body dying. Alternate translation: “By the death of his body on the cross” (See: Metonymy)

The...wall...of hostility (ULT)

The two groups hated each other...every reason for hating each other (UST)

“The wall of hatred” or “the wall of ill will”

Translation Words - ULT

• flesh
• peace

Translation Words - UST

• died for all of us
• to live peacefully with each other
Ephesians 2:15

He abolished the law of commandments contained in regulations (ULT)
He made it no longer necessary for us to obey the commandments and requirements of the Jewish law for him to accept us (UST)

Jesus’ blood satisfied the law of Moses so that both the Jews and Gentiles can live at peace in God.

one new man (ULT)
one new people (UST)

a single new people, the people of redeemed humanity (See: Metaphor)

contained in...himself (ULT)
and requirements of...by being joined to him (UST)

It is union with Christ that makes reconciliation possible between Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Words - ULT
• of commandments
• law
• peace
• regulations
• he might make
• making

Translation Words - UST
• the commandments
• Jewish law
• who would live peacefully together
• and requirements of
• make
• who would live peacefully together
Ephesians 2:16

so that he might reconcile both (ULT)
reconcile both groups (UST)

“Christ brings the Jews and the Gentiles together in peace”

through the cross (ULT)
by dying on the cross for all of them (UST)

The cross here represents Christ's death on the cross. Alternate translation: “by means of Christ's death on the cross” (See: Metonymy)

putting to death the hostility (ULT)
Jesus made it possible for them to stop being enemies
to each other and to God (UST)

Stopping their hostility is spoken of as if he killed their hostility. By dying on the cross Jesus eliminated the reason for Jews and Gentiles to be hostile toward each other. Neither are now required to live according to the law of Moses. Alternate translation: “stopping them from hating one another” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• to God
• body
• cross
• so that he might reconcile

Translation Words - UST

• to God
• group
• dying on the cross for all of them
• reconcile
Ephesians 2:17

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the Ephesian believers that present Gentile believers are also now made one with the Jewish apostles and prophets; they are a temple for God in the Spirit.

proclaimed peace (ULT) and announced the good news that we can be at peace with God; he announced (UST)

“announced the gospel of peace” or “declared the gospel of peace”

to you who were far away (ULT) to you non-Jews, who did not know about God (UST)

to you who were far away...who were near (ULT) to you non-Jews, who did not know about God (UST)

This refers to the Gentiles or non-Jews.

who were far away...who were near (ULT) who...to us Jews, who did know about God (UST)

This refers to the Jews.

Translation Words - ULT

• proclaimed
• peace
• peace (2)

Translation Words - UST

• and announced the good news...he announced
• that we can be at peace with God
• this (2)
Ephesians 2:18

for through him the two of us have access (ULT)
Because of what Jesus did for us, both Jews and non-Jews now can come (UST)

Here “we both” refers to Paul, the believing Jews, and the believing non-Jews. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

in one Spirit (ULT)
with the help of God’s Spirit (UST)

All believers, both Jewish and Gentile, are given the right to enter into the presence of God the Father by the same Holy Spirit.

Translation Words - UST

• God’s Spirit
• God the Father

ULT
18 for through him the two of us have access in one Spirit to the Father.

Translation Words - ULT

• Spirit
• Father
Ephesians 2:19

you are fellow citizens with the saints and members of God’s household (ULT)
you are fellow members with those whom God has set apart for himself and you belong to God’s family (UST)

Paul is again speaking of the spiritual condition of Gentiles after they become believers as he would speak about foreigners becoming citizens of a different nation. (See: Metaphor)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation Words - ULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• God’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• saints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• members of...household</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• fellow citizens with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation Words - UST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• God’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• whom God has set apart for himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• you belong to...family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• fellow members with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ephesians 2:20

You have been built on the foundation (ULT)
You are like stones that God has put together into a building...are like the foundation stones of that building. You depend on what they have taught, just as building stones depend on the foundation stones below them to form a wall that is upright and strong (UST)

Paul speaks of God's people as if they were a building. Christ is the cornerstone, the apostles are the foundation, and the believers are the structure. (See: Metaphor)

You have been built (ULT)
You are like stones that God has put together into a building...You...just as building stones...to form a wall that is upright and strong (UST)

This can be stated in the active tense. Alternate translation: “God has built you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Christ Jesus
- prophets
- the cornerstone
- apostles
- Christ
- foundation

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- The Messiah Jesus
- prophets
- like the cornerstone, which is the most important stone of the building
- apostles
- The Messiah
- are like the foundation stones of that building...what they have taught...the foundation stones below them
Ephesians 2:21

the whole building, being fit together, grows into a... temple (ULT)

Jesus is increasing his family of believers just as a builder does who joins stones together to make a... temple (UST)

Paul continues to speak of Christ's family as if it were a building. In the same way a builder fits stones together while building, so Christ is fitting us together. (See: Metaphor)

in whom...in the Lord (ULT)

Jesus determines where each person belongs, just as the cornerstone determines where each stone fits in the building...that serves the Lord (UST)

“In Christ...in the Lord Jesus” These metaphors express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Lord
• holy
• a...temple
• in the Lord

Translation Words - UST

• that serves the Lord
• holy
• a...temple
• that serves the Lord
Ephesians 2:22

in whom (ULT)
Because you belong to Jesus (UST)

“in Christ” This metaphor expresses the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him. (See: Metaphor)

you also are being built together into a dwelling place for God in the Spirit (ULT)
he is building you up together, both Jews and non-Jews, into one family that is like a building in which God lives by means of his Spirit (UST)

This describes how believers are being put together to become a place where God will permanently live through the power of the Holy Spirit. (See: Metaphor)

you also are being built together (ULT)
he is building you up together, both Jews and non-Jews (UST)

This can be stated as active. Alternate translation: “God is also building you together“ (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• for God
• the Spirit

Translation Words - UST

• God
• his Spirit
Ephesians 3

Ephesians 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

“I pray”

Paul structures part of this chapter as a prayer to God. But Paul is not just talking to God. He is both praying for and instructing the church in Ephesus.

Special concepts in this chapter

Mystery

Paul refers to the church as a “mystery.” The role of the church in the plans of God was once not known. But God has now revealed it. Part of this mystery involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God.
Ephesians 3:1

Connecting Statement:
To make clear the hidden truth about the church to believers, Paul refers back to the oneness of Jews and Gentiles and the temple of which believers are now a part.

Because of this (ULT)
Because God is working out this plan for you (UST)

“Because of God's grace to you”

a prisoner of Christ Jesus (ULT)
am in prison because I serve the Messiah Jesus (UST)

“the one whom Christ Jesus has put in prison”

Translation Words - ULT

• Christ Jesus
• Gentiles
• Christ
• Paul
• a prisoner

Translation Words - UST

• Messiah Jesus
• non-Jews
• Messiah
• Paul
• am in prison because I serve
Ephesians 3:2

the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you

“the responsibility that God gave me to bring his grace to you”

Translation Words - ULT

- grace
- God
- stewardship

Translation Words - UST

- that he wants to be very kind
- God
- the task of communicating

ULT

2 If indeed you have heard of the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you,

UST

2 I am sure that people have told you that God has given me the task of communicating that he wants to be very kind to you non-Jews.
Ephesians 3:3

according to the revelation made known to me (ULT)
God told me...by revealing it to me directly (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “according to what God revealed to me” (See: Active or Passive)

about which I already wrote briefly (ULT)
just as I wrote to you before briefly (UST)

Paul refers to another letter he had written to these people.

Translation Words - ULT

• the revelation
• mystery
• about which
• made known

Translation Words - UST

• revealing it...directly
• this message that people did not understand before
• just as
• God told

ULT
3 according to the revelation made known to me, the mystery about which I already wrote briefly.

UST
3 God told me this message that people did not understand before by revealing it to me directly, just as I wrote to you before briefly.
Ephesians 3:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- mystery
- to understand
- insight

Translation Words - UST

- Messiah
- things that God had not previously revealed
- perceive
- that...clearly understand

ULT

4 Concerning that, when you read it, you will be able to understand my insight into the mystery of Christ,

UST

4 As you read that, you can perceive that I clearly understand things that God had not previously revealed about the Messiah.
Ephesians 3:5

which in other generations was not made known to the sons of men (ULT)
Formerly, God did not fully reveal this message to people...it (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God did not make these things known to people in the past” (See: Active or Passive)

as it now has been revealed...by the Spirit (ULT)
but now...has revealed...his Spirit (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But now the Spirit has revealed it” or “But now the Spirit has made it known” (See: Active or Passive)

to the...his holy apostles and prophets (ULT)
to people...his holy apostles and prophets (UST)

“the apostles and prophets whom God set apart to do this work”

Translation Words - ULT

- it...has been revealed
- sons
- holy
- prophets
- the Spirit
- apostles
- as
- generations
- was...made known

Translation Words - UST

- has revealed
- to people
- holy
- prophets
- his Spirit
- apostles
- but now
- Formerly
- God did...fully reveal
Ephesians 3:6

that the Gentiles are fellow heirs...through the gospel (ULT)
The message is this: the non-Jews now share together with Jews the spiritual riches of God...as a result of believing the good news (UST)

This is the hidden truth Paul began to explain in the previous verse. The Gentiles who receive Christ also receive the same things as the Jewish believers.

fellow members of the body (ULT)
belong to the same group of God's people (UST)

The church is often referred to as the body of Christ. (See: Metaphor)

in Christ Jesus (ULT)
they are joined to the Messiah Jesus (UST)

“In Christ Jesus” and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

through the gospel (ULT)
as a result of believing the good news (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow sharers in the promise or 2) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow heirs and members of the body and fellow sharers in the promise.

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• fellow members of the body
• Gentiles
• gospel
• Christ
• promise
• in Christ Jesus
• fellow heirs

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• belong to the same group of God's people
• non-Jews
• good news
• the Messiah
• all the things God has promised to his people because
• they are joined to the Messiah Jesus
• now share together with Jews the spiritual riches of God
Ephesians 3:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• grace
• gift
• God's
• power
• a servant

Translation Words - UST

• was very kind to me...even though I am not worthy of it
• and gave me this work to do
• God
• powerfully
• serve God

ULT
7 for which I became a servant by the gift of God's grace given to me through the working of his power.

UST
7 I now serve God by telling people this good news. God was very kind to me and gave me this work to do even though I am not worthy of it, and he enables me to do it by powerfully working in me.
Ephesians 3:8

unsearchable (ULT)
unending (UST)

unable to be completely known (See: Metaphor)

riches of Christ (ULT)
spiritual blessings that the Messiah has for us (UST)

Paul speaks of the truth about Christ and the blessings he brings as if they were material wealth. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• grace
• the saints
• Gentiles
• Christ
• to preach

Translation Words - UST

• kindly...this gift
• of God's people
• to the non-Jews
• that the Messiah has for us
• he appointed me to proclaim...the good news about

ULT
8 To me—the least of all the saints—this grace was given, to preach to the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ.

UST
8 Although I am the least worthy of all of God's people, God kindly gave me this gift: he appointed me to proclaim to the non-Jews the good news about the unending spiritual blessings that the Messiah has for us.
Ephesians 3:9

the mystery hidden from the ages in God who created all things (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. “God, who created all things, kept this plan hidden for long ages in the past” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- mystery
- plan
- ages
- created

Translation Words - UST

- God
- This plan is something
- God's plan
- long ago
- created

ULT
9 and to reveal for everyone what is the plan—the mystery hidden from the ages in God who created all things—

UST
9 and to enable everyone to understand what God's plan is. This plan is something that God, who created everything, has kept hidden from long ago.
Ephesians 3:10

the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places would come to know the many-sided nature of the wisdom of God

“God will make his great wisdom known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places through the Church”

the rulers and authorities (ULT) to the spiritual authorities (UST)

These words share similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize that every spiritual being will know God’s wisdom. (See: Doublet)

in the heavenly places (ULT) at the highest levels (UST)

“in the supernatural world.” The word “heavenly” refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in Ephesians 1:3.

the multifaceted wisdom of God (ULT) God...how profoundly wise he is (UST)

God's complex wisdom (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- heavenly places
- church
- God
- wisdom
- authorities
- rulers
- might...come to know

Translation Words - UST

- the highest levels
- his chosen people
- God...he is
- wise
- to the spiritual authorities
- to the spiritual authorities
- as he reveals it...he also reveals
Ephesians 3:11

according to the eternal purpose (ULT)
This is the plan that God has always had (UST)

“in keeping with the eternal plan” or “consistent with the eternal plan”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• Lord
• Christ
• in Christ Jesus
• eternal

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• Lord
• Messiah
• through the work of the Messiah Jesus
• that God has always had

ULT
11 according to the eternal purpose that he accomplished in Christ Jesus our Lord.

UST
11 This is the plan that God has always had, and it is what he accomplished through the work of the Messiah Jesus, our Lord.
Ephesians 3:12

Connecting Statement:
Paul praises God in his sufferings and prays for these Ephesian believers.

we have boldness (ULT)
we can...freely (UST)

“we are without fear” or “we have courage”

access with confidence (ULT)
come to God...confidently (UST)

It may be helpful to state explicitly that this access is into God's presence. Alternate translation: “access into God's presence with confidence” or “freedom to enter into God's presence with confidence” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

confidence (ULT)
confidently (UST)

“certainty” or “assurance”

Translation Words - ULT
• faith
• boldness
• confidence

Translation Words - UST
• when we trust...he joins us to himself
• freely
• confidently
Ephesians 3:13

for you, which is your glory (ULT)
on your behalf, because they produce a glorious result
for you (UST)

Here “your glory” is a metonym for the pride they should feel or will feel in the future kingdom. The Christians in Ephesus should be proud of what Paul is suffering in prison. This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “for you. This is for your benefit” or “for you. You should be proud of this” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• your
• sufferings

Translation Words - UST
• a glorious result
• the things that...am suffering here in prison
Ephesians 3:14

For this reason (ULT)
Because God has done all this for you (UST)

You may need to make explicit what the reason is. Alternate translation: "Because God has done all this for you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I bend my knees to the Father (ULT)
I kneel and pray to God our Father (UST)

Bowed knees are a picture of the whole person in an attitude of prayer. Alternate translation: “I bow down in prayer to the Father” or “I humbly pray to the Father” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• Father
• I bend

Translation Words - UST

• God our Father
• kneel and pray
Ephesians 3:15

from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named (ULT)

He is the original father, who gave the pattern for every family in heaven and on the earth to follow (UST)

The act of naming here probably also represents the act of creating. Alternate translation: “who created and named every family in heaven and on earth” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- is named
- family
- earth

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- gave the pattern...to follow
- family
- the earth

ULT

15 from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named.

UST

15 He is the original father, who gave the pattern for every family in heaven and on the earth to follow.
Ephesians 3:16

he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power (ULT)
God will give you...to strengthen...in proportion to how abundantly great he is (UST)

“God, because he is so great and powerful, would allow you to become strong with his power”

he would grant (ULT)
God will give (UST)

“would give”

Translation Words - ULT

• Spirit
• with power
• glory
• to be strengthened

Translation Words - UST

• Spirit
• to strengthen
• great
• to strengthen
Ephesians 3:17

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues the prayer he began in Ephesians 3:14.

that Christ may live in your hearts through faith, that you will be rooted and grounded in his love

This is the second item for which Paul prays that God will “grant” the Ephesians “according to the riches of his glory.” The first is that they would “be strengthened” (Ephesians 3:16).

I pray that the Messiah may stay as close to you as your own hearts because you trust in him,

and that everything that you do and say will be a result of God’s love for you and your love for him and others.

Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being, and “through” expresses the means by which Christ lives within the believer. Christ lives in the hearts of believers because God graciously allows them to have faith. Alternate translation: “that Christ may live within you because you trust in him” (See: Metonymy)

being rooted and grounded in love

and that everything that you do and say will be a result of God’s love for you and your love for him and others

Paul speaks of their faith as if it were a tree that has deep roots or a house built on a solid foundation. Alternate translation: “that you will be like a firmly rooted tree and a building built on stone” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• love
• hearts
• faith
• Christ
• grounded

Translation Words - UST

• God's love for you and your love for him and others
• hearts
• you trust in him
• Messiah
• and that everything that you do and say will be
Ephesians 3:18

so that you may be fully able to comprehend (ULT)
so that you may be fully able to understand (UST)

These words can be combined with the words that begin with “faith, that you will be rooted and grounded in his love” in verse 17 in two ways. Possible meanings are 1) “faith. I pray that you will be rooted and grounded in his love so that you have strength and can understand” or 2) “faith so you will be rooted and grounded in his love. I also pray that you will have strength so you can understand”

to comprehend (ULT)
to understand (UST)

This is the second item for which Paul bends his knees and prays; the first is that God will grant that they be strengthened (Ephesians 3:16) and that Christ may live in their hearts through faith (Ephesians 3:17). And “understand” is the first thing that Paul prays that the Ephesians themselves will be able to do.

all the saints (ULT)
all of God’s people (UST)

“all believers in Christ” or “all the saints”

the width and length and height and depth (ULT)
very much the Messiah loves us (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) these words describe the greatness of God’s wisdom, Alternate translation: “how very wise God is” or 2) these word describe the intensity of Christ’s love for us. Alternate translation: “how much Christ loves us” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• saints
• you may be fully able

Translation Words - UST

• God’s people
• you may be fully able
Ephesians 3:19

ULT
19 and to know the love of Christ, which goes beyond knowledge, so that you may be filled with all the fullness of God.

UST
19 I want you to know how much the Messiah loves us, even though he loves us so much that we cannot understand it, so that God may fill you with everything that he is.

This is the second thing that Paul prays that the Ephesians will be able to do; the first is that they “understand.” Alternate translation: “that you can know how great Christ’s love for us is”

This is the third item for which Paul bends his knees and prays (Ephesians 3:14). The first is that they would “be strengthened” (Ephesians 3:16), and the second is that they “can understand” (Ephesians 3:18).

Translation Words - UST

- loves us
- God
- Messiah
- I want you to know how much
- even though he loves us so much that we cannot understand it

Translation Words - ULT

- love
- God
- Christ
- to know
- knowledge
Ephesians 3:20

**General Information:**

The words “we” and “us” in this book continue to include Paul and all believers. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul concludes his prayer with a blessing.

**Now to him who (ULT)**

“Now to God, who”

**to do exceedingly abundantly...that we ask or think (ULT)**

**to do much more...that we ask him to do, or even that we might think that he can do (UST)**

“to do much more than all that we ask or think” or “to do things that are much greater than all that we ask him for or think about”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- is able
- power
- think

**Translation Words - UST**

- is able
- power
- even that we might think that he can do
Ephesians 3:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- church
- Amen
- glory
- Christ
- in Christ Jesus
- forever
- and ever
- generations

ULT
21 to him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus to all generations forever and ever. Amen.

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- May all believers
- May it be so
- praise...for his greatness...for the awesome work that he has done
- the Messiah
- through the Messiah Jesus
- forever
- forever
- generations

UST
21 May all believers praise him for his greatness, and for the awesome work that he has done through the Messiah Jesus, throughout all generations, forever! May it be so.
Ephesians 4

Ephesians 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verse 8, which is quoted from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Spiritual gifts

Spiritual gifts are specific supernatural abilities that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians after they come to believe in Jesus. These spiritual gifts were foundational to developing the church. Paul lists here only some of the spiritual gifts. (See: faith)

Unity

Paul considers it very important that the church is united. This is a major theme of this chapter.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Old man and new man

The term “old man” probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The “new man” is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ.
Ephesians 4:1

Connecting Statement:

Because of what Paul has been writing to the Ephesians, he tells them how they should live their lives as believers and again emphasizes that believers are to agree with each other.

the prisoner for the Lord (ULT)
as someone who is in prison because...serve the Lord Jesus (UST)

“as someone who is in prison because of his choice to serve the Lord”

to walk worthily of the calling (ULT)
to live in a way that honors Jesus...to live for him (UST)

Walking is a common way to express the idea of living one's life. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• worthy
• calling
• you were called
• the Lord
• I urge
• for the Lord
• prisoner
• to walk

Translation Words - UST

• in a way that honors Jesus
• to live for him
• who called you
• the Lord Jesus
• I appeal to
• because...serve the Lord Jesus
• as someone who is in prison
• to live
Ephesians 4:2

with all humility and gentleness (ULT)
Always be humble and gentle (UST)

“to learn to be humble, gentle, and patient”

Translation Words - ULT

- love
- humility
- patience
- putting up with

Translation Words - UST

- you love
- be humble
- Be patient with each other
- enduring the bothersome things that others do

ULT
2 with all humility and gentleness, with patience, putting up with one another in love,

UST
2 Always be humble and gentle. Be patient with each other, enduring the bothersome things that others do, because you love each other.
Ephesians 4:3

to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace (ULT)
Since God's Spirit has united you...to remain united with one another. Bind yourselves together by acting peacefully toward each other (UST)

Here Paul speaks of “peace” as if it were a bond that ties people together. This is a metaphor for being united with other people by living peacefully with them. Alternate translation: “to live peacefully with one another and remain united as the Spirit made possible” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• bond
• Spirit
• peace

Translation Words - UST

• Bind yourselves together
• Since God's Spirit
• by acting peacefully toward each other
Ephesians 4:4

There is one body (ULT)
God only has one family of believers (UST)

The church is often referred to as the body of Christ. (See: Metaphor)

There is one...Spirit (ULT)
God only has one family of believers...one Holy Spirit (UST)

“only one Holy Spirit”

you were called in one certain hope of your calling (ULT)
he...called all of you to receive the one and only thing that people can hope for, that belongs only to you whom God has called (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God called you to have one confident hope in your calling” or “there is one thing that God also chose you to be confident in and expect him to do” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• you were called
• calling
• body
• Spirit
• certain hope
• just as

Translation Words - UST

• he...called all of you
• whom God has called
• God only has one family of believers
• one Holy Spirit
• thing that people can hope for
• just as
Ephesians 4:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• baptism
• Lord
• faith

Translation Words - UST

• we all are baptized
• Lord, Jesus the Messiah
• which is by trusting him completely

ULT
5 one Lord, one faith, one baptism,

UST
5 There is only one Lord, Jesus the Messiah, only one way to serve him, which is by trusting him completely, and we all are baptized for him alone.
Ephesians 4:6

Father of all...of all...over...of all...through...in all (ULT) who is the Father...of all of us, whether Jew or non-Jew...of all of us, whether Jew or non-Jew...rules over...of all of us, whether Jew or non-Jew...works through...is in all of us (UST)

The word “all” here means “everything.”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• God and Father

Translation Words - UST

• God
• God, who is the Father
Ephesians 4:7

General Information:
The quote here is from a song that King David wrote.

Connecting Statement:
Paul reminds believers of the gifts that Christ gives believers to use in the church, which is the whole body of believers.

To each one of us grace has been given

This can be stated using an active form. Alternate translation: “God has given grace to each one of us” or “God gave a gift to each believer” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• grace
• gift
• Christ

Translation Words - UST

• spiritual gifts
• them
• Messiah
Ephesians 4:8

When he ascended to the heights (ULT)
As he went up to the high place (UST)

“When Christ went up into heaven”

Translation Words - ULT

• gifts
• the heights

Translation Words - UST

• gifts
• the high place

ULT
8 Therefore it says: “When he ascended to the heights, he led the captives into captivity, and he gave gifts to men.”

UST
8 As the scripture says, As he went up to the high place, he brought with him many people whom he had captured, and gave gifts to his people.
Ephesians 4:9

He ascended (ULT)
he went up (UST)

“He ascended,
he went up”

he also descended (ULT)
the Messiah had also previously gone down (UST)

“he also descended,
the Messiah had also previously gone down”

into the lower regions of the earth (ULT)
to the deepest parts of the earth (UST)

“into the lower regions of the earth,
to the deepest parts of the earth”

Possible meanings are 1) the lower regions are a part of the earth or
2) “the lower regions” is another way of referring to the earth. Alternate translation: “into the lower regions, the earth”

Translation Words - ULT

• earth

Translation Words - UST

• earth
Ephesians 4:10

that he might fill all things (ULT)
in order that he might fill the universe (UST)

“so that he might be present everywhere in his power”

he might fill (ULT)
he might (UST)

“complete” or “satisfy”

Translation Words - ULT

• heavens

Translation Words - UST

• in heaven
Ephesians 4:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- evangelists
- apostles
- pastors
- teachers

Translation Words - UST

- to be prophets
- to seek out people to tell them the good news about Jesus
- to be apostles
- to care for
- to teach the groups of believers

ULT

11 He gave some to be apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, and some pastors and teachers.

UST

11 As gifts to his people, he appointed some of them to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to seek out people to tell them the good news about Jesus, and some to care for and to teach the groups of believers.
Ephesians 4:12

for the equipping of the saints (ULT)
God appointed all of them to prepare God's people (UST)

“to prepare the people he has set apart” or “to provide the believers with what they need”

for the work of serving (ULT)
to do the work of serving others (UST)

“so they can serve others”

for the building up of the body of Christ (ULT)
so that all the people who belong to the Messiah might become spiritually strong (UST)

Paul is speaking of people who grow spiritually as if they were doing exercises to increase the strength of their physical bodies. (See: Metaphor and Idiom)

the building up (ULT)
so that...might become spiritually strong (UST)

“improvement”

of the body...Christ (ULT)
all...people who belong to the Messiah (UST)

The “body of Christ” refers to all of the individual members of Christ's Church.

Translation Words - ULT

- saints
- body
- of serving
- the work
- Christ

Translation Words - UST

- God's people
- people who belong to
- of serving others
- to do the work
- Messiah
Ephesians 4:13

reach the unity of faith and knowledge of the Son of God

The believers need to know Jesus as the Son of God if they are to be united in faith and mature as believers.

we...reach...to the unity of faith (ULT)
become what God wants us to be...united as we together fully trust in (UST)

“become equally strong in faith” or “become united together in faith”
of the Son of God (ULT)
the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

to...a perfect man (ULT)
united...together...and completely mature as a group of believers (UST)

“become mature believers”

perfect (ULT)
and completely mature as a group of believers (UST)

“fully developed” or “grown up” or “complete”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Son of God
- faith
- Christ
- perfect
- knowledge

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Son of God
- as we...fully trust in
- Messiah himself
- and completely mature as a group of believers
- experience his working in us
Ephesians 4:14

we may...be children (ULT)
we will...be spiritually immature, as little children are immature. We will...We will (UST)

Paul refers to believers who have not grown spiritually as if they were children who have had very little experience in life. Alternate translation: “be like children” (See: Metaphor)

tossed back and forth by the waves and carried away by every wind of teaching (ULT)
follow every new teaching, always changing what we believe like a boat that goes one way and then the other as the wind and waves change direction (UST)

This speaks of a believer who has not become mature and follows wrong teaching as if that believer were a boat that the wind is blowing in different directions on the water. (See: Metaphor)

by the trickery of people in their deceitful schemes

“by crafty people who trick believers with clever lies”

Translation Words - UST

- spiritually immature, as little children are immature
- follow every new teaching
- with their lies

Translation Words - ULT

- children
- teaching
- deceitful
Ephesians 4:15

Instead, speaking the truth in love, let us grow up in every way into him who is the head, that is, Christ.

Paul uses the human body to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the head of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow healthy. (See: Metaphor)

in love (ULT)
lovingly (UST)

“as the members love one another”

Translation Words - ULT

• love
• speaking the truth
• that is, Christ
• head

Translation Words - UST

• lovingly
• as we...speak to each other about what is true
• the Messiah
• is like the head

ULT
15 Instead, speaking the truth in love, let us grow up in every way into him who is the head, that is, Christ.

UST
15 Instead, as we lovingly speak to each other about what is true, let us become more and more like the Messiah in every way. We believers are like a person's body, and the Messiah is like the head.
Ephesians 4:16

from whom the whole body...is made to grow...so that
the body builds itself up in love (ULT)
He is the one who...us all...his body...as we love each
other, we will grow together and make each other
stronger (UST)

Paul uses the human body to describe how Christ causes believers to
work together in harmony as the head of a body causes the body
parts to work together to grow healthy. (See: Metaphor)

by every supporting ligament (ULT)
how to support each other and to work in a
coordinated way (UST)

A "ligament" is a strong band that connects bones or organs in place
in the body.

Translation Words - ULT

• love
• body

Translation Words - UST

• we love
• us all
• his body
Ephesians 4:17

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells them what they should no longer do now that they as believers are sealed by the Holy Spirit of God.

Therefore, I say this and strongly urge...in the Lord (ULT)

For that reason, and with the authority of the Lord Jesus, I tell you this (UST)

“Because what I have just said, I will say something more to strongly encourage you because we all belong to the Lord”

and...you in...to walk no longer as the Gentiles...walk...the futility of their minds (ULT)
and...with the authority of...from now on you must not live in the same way as...the other...non-Jews live. The way they live...comes from an empty...way of thinking (UST)

“stop living like the Gentiles with their worthless thoughts”

Translation Words - ULT

• the Lord
• strongly urge
• Gentiles
• in the Lord
• the futility
• to walk
• walk
• minds
• as

Translation Words - UST

• the Lord Jesus
• with the authority of
• non-Jews
• with the authority of...the Lord Jesus
• comes from an empty
• must...live
• live. The way...live
• way of thinking
• in the same way as
Ephesians 4:18

They are darkened in their understanding (ULT)
They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong (UST)

They no longer think or reason clearly. Alternate translation: “They have darkened their thoughts” or “They are not able to understand” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

alienated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them (ULT)
because they try to live completely separated from God. They do this because they do not know what they are missing (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Because they do not know God, they cannot live the way God wants his people to live” or “They have cut themselves off from the life of God by their ignorance” (See: Active or Passive)

alienated (ULT)
completely separated from (UST)

“cut off” or “separated”

ignorance (ULT)
they do not know what they are missing (UST)

“lack of knowledge” or “lack of information”

because of the hardness of their hearts (ULT)
and because they stubbornly refuse to obey God (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metaphor for people’s minds. The phrase “hardness of their hearts” is a metaphor that means “stubbornness.” Alternate translation: “because they are stubborn” or “because they refuse to listen to God” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• God
• hearts
• They are darkened
• their understanding
• hardness

Translation Words - UST

• because they try to live
• God
• stubbornly refuse to obey God
• They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong
• They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong
• stubbornly refuse to obey God
Ephesians 4:19

have handed themselves over to sensuality (ULT) and so they have devoted themselves to doing whatever shameful things their bodies desire (UST)

Paul speaks of these people as if they were objects that they themselves were giving to other people, and he speaks of the way they want to satisfy their physical desires as if it were the person to whom they give themselves. Alternate translation: “only want to satisfy their physical desires” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• have handed...over
• greediness

Translation Words - UST

• and so they have devoted...to doing
• and want to do them more and more

ULT 19 They, being dead to all feeling, have handed themselves over to sensuality for the practice of every kind of impurity with greediness.

UST 19 They have become unable to sense if something is good or bad, and so they have devoted themselves to doing whatever shameful things their bodies desire. They commit all kinds of immoral acts and want to do them more and more.
Ephesians 4:20

But that is not how you learned about Christ (ULT)
But you learned a much better way when you learned about the Messiah (UST)

The word “that” refers to the way the Gentiles live, as described in Ephesians 4:17-19. This emphasizes that what the believers learned about Christ was the opposite of that. Alternate translation: “But what you learned about Christ was not like that”

Translation Words - ULT

• Christ

Translation Words - UST

• Messiah
Ephesians 4:21

if indeed you have heard about him and were taught in him (ULT)
I know that you have heard and understood the message about Jesus and have learned from him (UST)

Paul knows that the Ephesians have heard and been taught. (See: Irony)

were taught in him (ULT)
have learned from him (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “Jesus’ people have taught you” or 2) “someone has taught you because you are Jesus’ people.” (See: Active or Passive)

in...as the truth is...Jesus (ULT)
from...so you know that...his way...is the true way to live (UST)

“as everything about Jesus is true”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• the truth
• in Jesus
• were taught
• as

Translation Words - UST

• his way
• the true way to live
• his way
• have learned
• so you know that
Ephesians 4:22

You are to take off what belongs to your former manner of life (ULT)
Your teachers taught you to stop living the way that you used to live (UST)

Paul is speaking of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. Alternate translation: “to stop living according to your former manner of life” (See: Metaphor)

are to take off...the old man (ULT)
Your teachers taught...to stop living...Living like that (UST)

Paul is speaking of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. Alternate translation: “to stop living as your former self did” (See: Metaphor)

the old man (ULT)
Living like that (UST)

The “old man” refers to the “old nature” or “former self."

that is corrupt because of its deceitful desires (ULT)
Because you desired to do evil things, you deceived yourselves into thinking that those things were good...was destroying you spiritually (UST)

Paul speaks of the sinful human nature as if it were a dead body falling apart in its grave. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• its...desires
• deceitful
• that is corrupt

Translation Words - UST

• desired to do evil things
• you deceived yourselves into thinking that those things were good
• was destroying you spiritually
Ephesians 4:23

to be renewed...in the spirit of your minds (ULT)
must let God give...new...new...you...you a...spirit and a...way of thinking (UST)

This may be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: “to allow God to change your attitudes and thoughts” or “to allow God to give you new attitudes and thoughts” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit
- minds

Translation Words - UST

- a...spirit
- and a...way of thinking

ULT
23 and to be renewed in the spirit of your minds,

UST
23 So you must let God give you a new spirit and a new way of thinking.
Ephesians 4:24

and...in true righteousness...holiness (ULT)
and...to live in the right way with each other...with God, in the true way of Jesus (UST)

“truly righteous and holy”

Translation Words - ULT

- righteousness
- holiness
- God
- true
- is created
- to put on

Translation Words - UST

- the right way with each other
- with God
- that God...in his own image
- true way of Jesus
- created you to be...He created you
- you must start living like

ULT

24 and to put on the new man that is created in the image of God—in true righteousness and holiness.

UST

24 and you must start living like the new person that God created you to be, in his own image. He created you to live in the right way with each other and with God, in the true way of Jesus.
Ephesians 4:25

putting aside lying (ULT)
stop lying (UST)

“stop telling lies”

we are members of one another (ULT)
we belong to each other as members of God’s family (UST)

“we belong to one another” or “we are members of God’s family”

Translation Words - ULT

• truth
• members
• neighbor

Translation Words - UST

• truthfully
• as members of God’s family
• to one another...to each other
Ephesians 4:26

Be angry and do not sin (ULT)
Be angry about sinful behavior, but do not sin because you are angry (UST)

“You may get angry, but do not sin” or “If you become angry, do not sin”

Do not let the sun go down on your indignation (ULT)
Before the end of each day, take care of whatever has made you angry (UST)

The sun going down represents nightfall, or the end of the day.
Alternate translation: “You must stop being angry before night comes” or “Let go of your anger before the day ends” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• sin

Translation Words - UST
• sin because you are angry
Ephesians 4:27

nor give an opportunity to the devil (ULT)
so that you will not allow the devil to do evil things among you (UST)

“Do not give the devil an opportunity to lead you into sin”

Translation Words - ULT

• devil

Translation Words - UST

• devil
Ephesians 4:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- useful
- his hands
- he must labor
- doing...work
- he must labor, doing...work

Translation Words - UST

- good
- by their own efforts
- they must work hard
- doing...work
- they must work hard, doing...work

ULT
28 The thief must steal no longer. But rather, he must labor, doing useful work with his hands, so that he may have something to share with those who have a need.

UST
28 Those who have been stealing must not steal any longer. Instead, they must work hard, doing good work by their own efforts, so that they may have something to give to those who are needy.
Ephesians 4:29

**filthy talk (ULT)**
**harmful...things (UST)**

This refers to speech that is cruel or rude.

**for building up (ULT)**
**that will encourage people (UST)**

“for encouraging others” or “for strengthening others”

**of the one in need, so that it might give grace to the hearers (ULT)**
**when they need help, so that God can work through your words to benefit those who hear (UST)**

“their needs. In this way you will help those who hear you”

Translation Words - ULT

- grace
- is beneficial
- filthy

Translation Words - UST

- God can work through your words to benefit
- good
- harmful

ULT
29 Do not let any filthy talk come out of your mouth, but whatever is beneficial for building up of the one in need, so that it might give grace to the hearers,

UST
29 Do not say harmful things. Instead, say good things that will encourage people when they need help, so that God can work through your words to benefit those who hear.
Ephesians 4:30

do not grieve (ULT)
do not make...sad by how you live (UST)

“do not distress” or “do not upset”

by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption (ULT)
God has marked you as his own by giving you the Holy Spirit, who will be with you until the day that the Messiah will rescue you from this world (UST)

The Holy Spirit assures believers that God will redeem them. Paul speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were a mark that God puts on believers to show that he owns them. Alternate translation: “for he is the seal that assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption” or “for he is the one who assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption” or (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Holy
• God
• Holy Spirit of God
• of redemption
• you were sealed
• the day

Translation Words - UST

• Holy
• God
• Holy Spirit of God
• that the Messiah will rescue you from this world
• God has marked you as his own
• the day
Ephesians 4:31

Connecting Statement:
Paul finishes his instructions on what believers should not do and ends with what they must do.

**ult**

**all bitterness, and rage, and anger...Let...be removed (ULT)**

**completely...Do not be resentful or furious toward others or even become angry with others...Do your best to...stop behaving in these ways (UST)**

“Put away” here is a metaphor for not continuing to have certain attitudes or behaviors. Alternate translation: “You must not allow these things to be part of your life: bitterness, rage, anger” (See: Metaphor)

**rage (ULT)**

**furious toward others (UST)**

intense anger

Translation Words - ULT

- anger
- evil
- insults

Translation Words - UST

- even become angry with others
- act maliciously in any way
- slander others

ULT

31 Let all bitterness, and rage, and anger, and quarreling, and insults be removed from yourselves, along with every kind of evil.

UST

31 Do your best to completely stop behaving in these ways: Do not be resentful or furious toward others or even become angry with others. Do not shout abusively at others or slander others. Never act maliciously in any way.
“Instead, be kind to each other, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, just as God in Christ also forgave you. Rather than behave like that, be kind to one another. Act mercifully toward each other. Forgive each other, in the same way that God also forgave you through what the Messiah has done for you.
Ephesians 5

Ephesians 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the words of verse 14.

Special concepts in this chapter

Inheritance of the kingdom of Christ

This is difficult to understand. Some scholars believe those who continue to practice these things will not inherit eternal life. But God can forgive all the sins listed in this verse. So immoral, impure, or greedy people can still receive eternal life if they repent and believe in Jesus. A more natural reading is “No person who is sexually immoral or indecent, or who is greedy (for this is the same as worshiping idols) will be among God’s people over whom Christ rules as king.” (UST) (See: forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned, eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever and life, live, living, alive and inherit, inheritance, heir)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Wives, submit to your husbands

Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this passage.
Ephesians 5:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to tell the believers how they should and should not live as God's children.

Therefore be imitators of God (ULT)

“So therefore you should do what God does.” Therefore refers back to Ephesians 4:32 which tells why believers should imitate God, because Christ forgave believers.

as dearly loved children (ULT)
just as children...who loves them dearly (UST)

God desires us to imitate or follow him since we are his children. Alternate translation: “as dearly loved children imitate their fathers” or “because you are his children and he loves you dearly” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• children
• dearly loved
• imitators
• as

Translation Words - UST

• God...the father
• children
• who loves them dearly
• imitate him...imitate
• just as

ULT

1 Therefore be imitators of God, as dearly loved children.

UST

1 Because of what God has done for you, imitate him, just as children imitate the father who loves them dearly.

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Introduction to Ephesians :: Ephesians 5:1

120 / 500
Ephesians 5:2

**walk in love (ULT)**

Do everything in a way that...shows that you love others (UST)

Walking is a common way to express the idea of living one's life. Alternate translation: “live a life of love” or “always love each other” (See: Metaphor)

**and...an offering...sacrifice to God giving a fragrant aroma (ULT)**

Do everything in a way that...as the offering...sacrifice to God in our place. This sacrifice pleased God very much (UST)

“like a sweet-smelling offering and sacrifice to God”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- love
- loved
- God
- Christ
- an offering
- sacrifice
- walk
- as

**Translation Words - UST**

- shows that you love others
- who loved...so much
- God...God
- Messiah
- as the offering
- sacrifice...in our place. This sacrifice
- Do everything in a way that
- Be like
Ephesians 5:3

But sexual immorality and any kind of impurity or of greed must not even be named among you (ULT)
But there should be no reason for anyone to even suggest that any of you are involved in sexual sin or any kind of immoral or obsessive sexual behavior (UST)

“Do not do anything that would let anyone think that you are guilty of sexual immorality or any kind of impurity or greed”

any kind of impurity (ULT)
any kind of immoral (UST)

“any moral uncleanness”

Translation Words - ULT
- for saints
- of greed
- just as
- sexual immorality

Translation Words - UST
- among God's people
- obsessive sexual behavior
- Such sins do not belong
- are involved in sexual sin

ULT
3 But sexual immorality and any kind of impurity or of greed must not even be named among you, just as is proper for saints.

UST
3 But there should be no reason for anyone to even suggest that any of you are involved in sexual sin or any kind of immoral or obsessive sexual behavior. Such sins do not belong among God's people.
Ephesians 5:4

but instead thanksgiving (ULT)
Instead, express the things that you are thankful for (UST)

“Instead you should thank God”

Translation Words - ULT

• foolish talk

Translation Words - UST

• say foolish things

ULT

4 and filthiness and foolish talk or crude jokes—which are not fitting—but instead thanksgiving.

UST

4 When you speak to each other, do not tell obscene stories or say foolish things or joke about committing sins. Such things are not what people who belong to God talk about. Instead, express the things that you are thankful for.
Ephesians 5:5

**ULT**

Indeed, you can be sure of this, that every sexually immoral or impure or greedy person—that is, an idolater—has no inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.

**UST**

It is quite true that these people will be excluded from the kingdom of the Messiah who is God: Everyone who is sexually immoral or indecent, or who is obsessed with sex, which is the same as worshiping an idol.

---

**Translation Words - ULT**

- inheritance
- of God
- impure
- an idolater
- kingdom of Christ and of God
- Christ
- greedy person
- kingdom
- sexually immoral
- you can be sure of
- you can be sure of

**Translation Words - UST**

- these people will be excluded
- God
- indecent
- worshiping an idol
- kingdom of the Messiah who is God
- Messiah
- who is obsessed with sex
- kingdom
- who is sexually immoral
- is quite true
- is quite true
Ephesians 5:6

with empty words (ULT)
by telling you that we should accept these practices (UST)

words that have no truth to them

Translation Words - ULT

• sons
• God
• anger
• empty
• disobedience
• Let...deceive

Translation Words - UST

• people
• God
• that...punishes
• by telling you that we should accept these practices
• disobey him
• Do...let...deceive
Ephesians 5:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
7 Therefore, do not become partners with them,

UST
7 So do not join with those people in doing these kinds of sins.
Ephesians 5:8

because formerly you were darkness (ULT)
Remember that before you believed in the Lord Jesus, you did not know what was true, just as people who are in a dark place do not know what is around them (UST)

Just as one cannot see in the dark, so people who love to sin lack spiritual understanding. (See: Metaphor)

but now are light in the Lord (ULT)
But now it is as though you have come out into the light, because the Lord has shown to you what is true...the Lord (UST)

Just as one can see in the light, so people whom God has saved understand how to please God. (See: Metaphor)

Walk as children of light (ULT)
So live in the way that...has shown to you (UST)

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Alternate translation: “Live as people who understand what the Lord wants them to do” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Lord
• children
• in the Lord
• darkness
• are light
• of light
• Walk
• as

Translation Words - UST

• the Lord...the Lord
• in the way that...has shown to you
• because the Lord has shown to you what is true...the Lord
• not...what was true, just as people who are in a dark place do not know what is around them
• it is as though you have come out into the light
• in the way that...has shown to you
• live
• So
Ephesians 5:9

the...fruit of the light consists in all goodness and righteousness and truth (ULT)

“Fruit” here is a metaphor for “result” or “outcome.” Alternate translation: “the result of living in the light is good work, right living, and truthful behavior” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• righteousness
• truth
• goodness
• fruit
• light

Translation Words - UST

• right
• true
• good
• just as people who have...will walk in the right way, as a result of knowing
• light...Jesus
Ephesians 5:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• carefully considering

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• As you live this way, keep learning

ULT
10 carefully considering what is pleasing to the Lord.

UST
10 As you live this way, keep learning what pleases the Lord.
Ephesians 5:11

Do not...take part in the unfruitful works of darkness (ULT)
do not participate together with those who are doing the worthless deeds that they do in spiritual darkness (UST)

Paul speaks of the useless, sinful things that unbelievers do as if they are evil deeds people do in the dark so no one will see them. Alternate translation: “Do not do useless, sinful things with unbelievers” (See: Metaphor)

unfruitful works (ULT)
the worthless deeds that they do (UST)

actions that do nothing good, useful, or profitable. Paul is comparing evil actions to an unhealthy tree that produces nothing good. (See: Metaphor)

expose them (ULT)
expose to everyone how worthless those deeds are (UST)

Speaking against the works of darkness is spoken of as bringing them out into the light so that people can see them. Alternate translation: “bring them out into the light” or “uncover them” or “show and tell people how wrong these actions are” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
• take part
• works
• unfruitful
• darkness
• expose them

Translation Words - UST
• participate together with
• the...deeds that they do
• worthless
• in spiritual darkness
• expose to everyone how worthless those deeds are
Ephesians 5:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• shameful

Translation Words - UST

• shameful for God's people

ULT
12 For it is shameful even to mention the things done by them in secret.

UST
12 Of course, it is shameful for God's people to even talk about the evil things that people do in secret,
Ephesians 5:13

General Information:

It is unknown if this quotation is a combination of quotations from the prophet Isaiah or a quotation from a hymn sung by the believers.

everything...revealed is light (ULT) these deeds...it...reveal to everyone...Then people can examine and judge that thing that light has exposed (UST)

“people can clearly see everything that comes into the light.” Paul makes this general statement in order to imply that God's Word shows people's actions to be good or bad. The Bible often speaks of God's truth as if it were light that could reveal the character of something. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• is revealed
• revealed
• light
• light
• exposed

Translation Words - UST

• people can know and understand that...are evil...what...truly is
• reveal to everyone...Then people can examine and judge
• into the light
• light
• it is necessary for us to expose...This is like when we bring
Ephesians 5:14

**Awake, you sleeper, and arise from the dead (ULT)**

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is addressing unbelievers who need to wake up from being dead spiritually just as a person who has died must come alive again in order to respond, or 2) Paul is addressing the Ephesian believers and using death as a metaphor for their spiritual weakness. (See: *Apostrophe* and *Metaphor*)

**from the dead (ULT)**

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To arise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

**you sleeper...will shine on you (ULT)**

You who are asleep...will show...you...what is true...just as a light that shines shows people what was in the darkness (UST)

These instances of “you” refer to the “sleeper” and are singular. (See: *Forms of You*)

**Christ will shine on you (ULT)**

The Messiah...will show...you...what is true...just as a light that shines shows people what was in the darkness (UST)

Christ will enable an unbeliever to understand how evil his deeds are and how Christ will forgive him and give him new life, just as light shows what actually is there that darkness hid. (See: *Metaphor*)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Christ
- dead
- sleeper
- Awake
- arise

**Translation Words - UST**

- Messiah
- You who are dead
- You who are asleep
- Wake up
- come out of the darkness and live
Ephesians 5:15

Watch...carefully...how you walk—not as unwise but as wise (ULT)
be very...careful how you live. Do not behave as foolish people do. Instead, behave as wise people do (UST)

Unwise people do not guard themselves against sin. Wise people, however, can identify sin and flee from it. Alternate translation: “Therefore you must be careful to live as a wise person rather than a foolish person” (See: Double Negatives and Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- wise
- you walk
- as
- as (2)

Translation Words - UST

- wise people
- you live...behave...do...behave...do
- as
- as (2)
Ephesians 5:16

redeeming the time (ULT)
Do the most good that you can with the time that you have (UST)

Using time wisely is spoken of as if it were redeeming the time. Alternate translation: “Do the best things you can with your time” or “Use time wisely” or “Put time to its best use” (See: Metaphor)

because the days are evil (ULT)
because people are doing more and more evil things every day (UST)

The word “days” is a metonym for what people do during those days. Alternate translation: “because the people around you are doing all kinds of evil things” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• redeeming
• evil
• time
• days

Translation Words - UST

• Do the most good that you can with
• people...doing...evil things
• time that you have
• more and more...every day
Ephesians 5:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• foolish
• Lord
• will of the Lord
• understand

Translation Words - UST

• be wise
• Lord Jesus
• it is that...the Lord Jesus...wants you to do, and do it
• understand well

ULT
17 Therefore, do not be foolish, but understand what the will of the Lord is.

UST
17 So be wise, understand well what it is that the Lord Jesus wants you to do, and do it!
Ephesians 5:18

Connecting Statement:
Paul ends his instructions on how all believers should live.

Do not get drunk with wine (ULT)
“You should not get drunk from drinking wine”

Instead, be filled with the Spirit (ULT)
in...Instead, be filled...the Spirit (ULT)
because...Instead, let...God’s Spirit...control what you do at all times (UST)
“Instead, you should be controlled with the Holy Spirit”

Translation Words - UST
• let...control what you do at all times
• God’s Spirit
• become drunk
• by drinking alcoholic drinks

Translation Words - ULT
• be filled
• the Spirit
• get drunk
• with wine

ULT
18 Do not get drunk with wine, in which is recklessness. Instead, be filled with the Spirit,

UST
18 Do not become drunk by drinking alcoholic drinks, because people cannot control themselves when they are drunk. Instead, let God's Spirit control what you do at all times.
Ephesians 5:19

psalms, and hymns, and spiritual songs (ULT)
Psalms...and songs about the Messiah, and songs that God's Spirit gives you (UST)

Possible meanings are that 1) Paul is using these words as a merism for "all sorts of songs to praise God" or 2) Paul is listing specific forms of music. (See: Merism)

psalms (ULT)
Psalms (UST)

These are probably songs from the Old Testament book of Psalms that Christians sang.

hymns (ULT)
songs about the Messiah (UST)

These are songs of praise and worship that may have been written specifically for Christians to sing.

spiritual songs (ULT)
songs that God's Spirit gives you (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) these are songs that Holy Spirit inspires a person to sing right at that moment or 2) “spiritual songs” and “hymns” are doublets and mean basically the same thing. (See: Doublet)

in your heart (ULT)
Even when you are not singing out loud...within yourself (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person's thoughts or inner being. The phrase “with all your heart” means to do something with enthusiasm. Alternate translation: “with all of your being” or “enthusiastically” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• heart
• psalms
• making melody
• spiritual

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• Even when you are not singing out loud...within
• Psalms
• offer music
• that God's Spirit gives you
Ephesians 5:20

Ult
20 giving thanks always for everything in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ to God the Father,

Ust
20 At all times thank God the Father for everything because of what our Lord Jesus the Messiah has done for you.

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus Christ
• Lord
• God
• God the Father
• the name
• Christ

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus the Messiah
• Lord
• God
• God...the Father
• because of what...has done for you
• the Messiah
Ephesians 5:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• for Christ
• submitting yourselves
• reverence

Translation Words - UST

• the Messiah
• Humbly submit
• you respect

ULT
21 submitting yourselves to one another in reverence for Christ—

UST
21 Humbly submit yourselves to each other because you respect the Messiah.
Ephesians 5:22

Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to explain how Christians are to submit themselves to one another (Ephesians 5:21). He starts with instructions to wives and husbands on how they should act toward each other.

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- as

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

ULT

22 wives, to your own husbands, as to the Lord.

UST

22-23 Wives should submit to their own husband's leadership as they do to the Lord Jesus, because the husband is the leader of the wife as also the Messiah is the leader of the worldwide assembly of believers. He is the Savior who has saved all believers from being condemned for their sins.
Ephesians 5:23

the head of the wife...the head of the church (ULT)

The word “head” represents the leader. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- church
- body
- he himself being the savior
- Christ
- the head
- the head (2)
- as

Translation Words - UST

- church, Church
- body
- Savior, savior
- Christ, Messiah
- head
- head (2)
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

ULT

23 For the husband is the head of the wife as Christ also is the head of the church—he himself being the savior of the body.

UST

22-23 Wives should submit to their own husband's leadership as they do to the Lord Jesus, because the husband is the leader of the wife as also the Messiah is the leader of the worldwide assembly of believers. He is the Savior who has saved all believers from being condemned for their sins.
Ephesians 5:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- church
- Christ
- is subject
- just as

Translation Words - UST

- all believers
- Messiah
- submit themselves...must...submit themselves
- just as

ULT

24 Then just as the church is subject to Christ, so also are wives to husbands in everything.

UST

24 As for wives, just as all believers submit themselves to the authority of the Messiah, in the same way wives must also submit themselves completely to the authority of their husbands.
Ephesians 5:25

General Information:
Here the words “himself” and “he” refer to Christ. The word “her” refers to the church.

love your wives (ULT)
love your wife (UST)

Here “love” refers to unselfish serving or giving love to wives.

gave himself up (ULT)
He...gave up his own life...on the cross (UST)

“allowed people to kill him”

for her (ULT)
for us (UST)

Paul speaks of the assembly of believers as though it were a woman whom Jesus will marry. Alternate translation: “for us” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- church
- love
- loved
- Christ
- as

Translation Words - UST
- all who would believe in him
- love
- loved
- Messiah
- as much as
Ephesians 5:26

having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word (ULT)

By speaking his message to us, Jesus purified...He removed our sins from...just as people make things clean by washing them with water (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is referring to God making Christ’s people clean by God’s word and through water baptism in Christ or 2) Paul speaks of God making us spiritually clean from our sins by the message as if God were making our bodies clean by washing them with water. (See: Metaphor)

he might make her holy, having cleansed her (ULT)
he might set us apart for himself...Jesus purified us. He removed our sins from us (UST)

Paul speaks of the assembly of believers as though it were a woman whom Jesus will marry. Alternate translation: “make us holy...cleansed us” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• the word
• having cleansed her
• washing
• he might make...holy
• water

Translation Words - UST

• speaking his message to us
• Jesus purified...He removed our sins from
• people make things clean by washing them
• he might set...apart for himself
• with water
Ephesians 5:27

not having stain or wrinkle (ULT)
that is completely clean and perfect...ready to meet her groom (UST)

Paul speaks of the church as though it were a garment that is clean and in good condition. He uses the same idea in two ways to emphasize the church's purity. (See: Metaphor and Doublet)

holy and without fault (ULT)
without sin or any fault (UST)

The phrase “without fault” means basically the same thing as “holy.” Paul uses the two together to emphasize the church's purity. (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• church
• holy
• without fault
• as glorious

Translation Words - UST

• group of all believers
• without sin
• any fault
• as a glorious group...like a glorious bride

ULT
27 so that he might present the church to himself as glorious, not having stain or wrinkle or any such thing, but so that she might be holy and without fault.

UST
27 He did this so that he could present the group of all believers to himself as a glorious group that is completely clean and perfect, without sin or any fault, like a glorious bride ready to meet her groom.
Ephesians 5:28

as their own bodies (ULT)
as much as...his own body (UST)

That people love their own bodies may be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “as husbands love their own bodies” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• to love
• loves
• bodies
• as

Translation Words - UST

• love...he loves
• who loves
• is also, by doing that, loving
• body
• as much as

ULT
28 In the same way husbands also ought to love their own wives as their own bodies. He who loves his own wife loves himself.

UST
28 In that same way each man should love his own wife as much as he loves his own body. A man who loves his wife is also, by doing that, loving himself,
Ephesians 5:29

but he nourishes (ULT)

“but feeds”

Translation Words - ULT

- church
- body
- Christ
- just as...does

Translation Words - UST

- church, Church
- flesh
- Christ, Messiah
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

ULT

29 For no one ever hated his own body, but he nourishes and treats it with care, just as Christ also does the church.

UST

29-30 because no one ever hated his own body. Instead, he feeds his own body and cares for it, just like the Messiah also cares for all us believers in his worldwide assembly. We have become one group of believers that belongs to him.
Ephesians 5:30

we are members of his body (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of the close union of believers with Christ as if they were part of his own body, for which he would naturally care. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- body
- members

Translation Words - UST

- body
- member, body parts

ULT

30 because we are members of his body.

UST

29-30 because no one ever hated his own body. Instead, he feeds his own body and cares for it, just like the Messiah also cares for all us believers in his worldwide assembly. We have become one group of believers that belongs to him.
Ephesians 5:31

General Information:
The quotation is from the writings of Moses in the Old Testament.

General Information:
The words “his” and “himself” refer to a male believer who marries.

Translation Words - UST

• one flesh
• his father

Translation Words - UST

• person
• his father

ULT 31 “For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and will be joined to his wife, and the two will become one flesh.”

UST 31 The scriptures say this about people who marry: “Therefore a man will leave his father and his mother and will join himself to his wife, and the two of them will become as though they were one person.”
Ephesians 5:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- church
- Christ
- mystery

Translation Words - UST

- his worldwide assembly of believers
- the Messiah
- that we cannot understand...of a husband and wife

ULT
32 This mystery is great—but I am speaking about Christ and about the church.

UST
32 There is very much about this that we cannot understand, but I am telling you that this example of a husband and wife also helps us to understand some things about how much the Messiah loves his worldwide assembly of believers.
Ephesians 5:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• respect
• as

Translation Words - UST

• must deeply respect
• as

ULT
33 Nevertheless, you also—each one of you—must love his own wife in this way—as himself, and the wife must respect her husband.

UST
33 However, as for you, each man must love his wife just as he loves himself, and each woman must deeply respect her husband.
Ephesians 6

Ephesians 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Slavery

Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about working to please God whether as a slave or as a master. What Paul teaches here about slavery would have been surprising. In his time, masters were not expected to treat their slaves with respect and not threaten them.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Armor of God

This extended metaphor describes how Christians can protect themselves when spiritually attacked. (See: spirit, spiritual and Metaphor)
Ephesians 6:1

General Information:
The first word “your” is plural. Then Paul quotes Moses. Moses was talking to the people of Israel as though they were one person, so “your” and “you” are singular. You may need to translate them as plurals. (See: Forms of You)

Connecting Statement:
Paul continues to explain how Christians are to submit themselves to each other. He gives instructions to children, fathers, workers, and masters.

Children, obey your parents in the Lord (ULT)
As for you who are children, obey your parents as a way of serving the Lord Jesus (UST)

Paul reminds children to obey their physical parents.

Translation Words - ULT

• right
• the Lord
• Children
• in the Lord
• obey

Translation Words - UST

• right for you to do
• the Lord Jesus
• As for you who are children
• as a way of serving the Lord Jesus
• obey
Ephesians 6:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- commandment
- Honor
- a promise
- father

Translation Words - UST

- law that God commanded
- Greatly respect
- he also promised something. He promised
- father

ULT

2 “Honor your father and mother” (which is the first commandment with a promise),

UST

2 God commanded in the scriptures, “Greatly respect your father and mother.” That is the first law that God commanded in which he also promised something. He promised,
Ephesians 6:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- earth

Translation Words - UST

- earth

ULT

3 “so that it may be well with you and you may be long-lived on the earth.”

UST

3 “If you do that, you will prosper, and you will live a long time on the earth.”
Ephesians 6:4

do not provoke your children to anger (ULT)
do not treat your children in a way that makes them become angry (UST)

“do not make your children angry” or “do not cause your children to be angry”

raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord (ULT)
bring them up well by instructing them and by disciplining them in the manner that the Lord Jesus wants you to do (UST)

The abstract nouns “discipline” and “instruction” can be expressed as verbs. Alternate translation: “teach them to become adults by making sure that they know and do what the Lord wants them to do” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• of the Lord
• the discipline
• children
• Fathers
• provoke...to anger
• instruction

Translation Words - UST

• in the manner that the Lord Jesus wants you to do
• instructing them
• children
• As for you who are fathers
• treat...in a way that makes them become angry
• by disciplining them
Ephesians 6:5

be obedient to (ULT)

obey (UST)

“obey.” This is a command.

fear and trembling (ULT)

very respectfully (UST)

The phrase “deep respect and trembling” uses two similar ideas to emphasize the importance of honoring their masters. (See: Doublet and Idiom)

and trembling (ULT)

very respectfully (UST)

Here “trembling” is an exaggeration used to emphasize how important it is that slaves obey their masters. Alternate translation: “and fear” or “as though you were shaking with fear” (See: Hyperbole)

in the honesty of your heart (ULT)

and sincerely (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person's mind or intentions. Alternate translation: “with honesty” or “with sincerity” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• fear
• masters
• human
• heart
• Christ
• be obedient to
• trembling
• as
• Slaves

Translation Words - UST

• very respectfully
• who are your masters
• here on the earth
• and sincerely
• Messiah
• obey
• very respectfully
• just as you obey
• As for you who are slaves

ULT

5 Slaves, be obedient to your human masters with fear and trembling, in the honesty of your heart, as to Christ.

UST

5 As for you who are slaves, obey those who are your masters here on the earth very respectfully and sincerely, just as you obey the Messiah.
Ephesians 6:6

as...slaves of Christ (ULT)
as...you were slaves of the Messiah (UST)

Serve your earthly master as though your earthly master were Christ himself.

from the soul (ULT)
enthusiastically (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for “thoughts” or “intentions.” Alternate translation: “with sincerity” or “enthusiastically” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• the soul
• will of God
• of Christ
• as
• as (2)
• slaves

Translation Words - UST

• God
• enthusiastically
• what...God...wants you to do
• of the Messiah
• as
• work as though (2)
• you were slaves

ULT
6 not with eye-service as men-pleasers, but as slaves of Christ, doing the will of God from the soul,

UST
6 Obey them not only when they are watching you, as people do who only care about appearing to work hard. Instead, work as though you were slaves of the Messiah, doing enthusiastically what God wants you to do.
serving with a good attitude (ULT)
Serve your masters willingly (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for “thoughts” or “inner being.” Alternate translation: “Serve with all of your being” or “Be completely dedicated when you serve” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• as
• serving

Translation Words - UST

• Lord Jesus
• as though you are serving
• Serve your masters

ULT
7 serving with a good attitude, as to the Lord and not men,

UST
7 Serve your masters willingly, as though you are serving the Lord Jesus rather than people.
Ephesians 6:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- good
- he will receive
- slave
- free
- knowing

Translation Words - UST

- the Lord Jesus
- good deeds
- will reward
- a slave
- a free person
- Do this because you know

ULT

8 knowing that each person, if he does something good, this he will receive from the Lord, whether slave or free.

UST

8 Do this because you know that the Lord Jesus will reward each person for whatever good deeds that person has done. It makes no difference whether that person was a slave or a free person.
Ephesians 6:9

do the same to them (ULT)
just like your slaves should serve you well, in the same way you must treat them well (UST)

“you also must treat your slaves well” or “just as slaves must do good to their masters, you also must do good to your slaves” (Ephesians 6:5)

You know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven

“You know that Christ is the Master of both slaves and their masters, and that he is in heaven”

there is no favoritism with him (ULT)
he judges everyone equally, whether their position is high or low (UST)

“he judges everyone the same way”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- Masters
- Master
- favoritism
- You know

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- masters
- Lord...Lord
- he judges everyone equally, whether their position is high or low
- Do not forget
Ephesians 6:10

Connecting Statement:

Paul gives instructions to make believers strong in this battle we live for God.

the power of his might (ULT)
he...is immeasurably strong (UST)

“his great power.” See how “the strength of his power” is translated near the end of Ephesians 1:21.

Translation Words - ULT
  • the Lord
  • in the Lord
  • power
  • might
  • be strong

Translation Words - UST
  • the Lord Jesus
  • on the Lord Jesus
  • is immeasurably strong
  • is immeasurably strong
  • rely completely...to strengthen you spiritually
Ephesians 6:11

Put on the whole armor of God, so that you may be able to stand against the scheming plans of the devil (ULT)

Just as a soldier puts on all of his armor to be ready to fight his enemy, you should use every spiritual resource that God provides for you so that you may successfully resist the devil when he cleverly schemes against you (UST)

Christians should use all the resources God gives to stand firmly against the devil just as a soldier puts on armor to protect himself from enemy attacks. (See: Metaphor)

the scheming plans (ULT)
when he cleverly schemes against you (UST)

“the tricky plans”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• may be able
• devil
• whole armor
• Put on

Translation Words - UST

• that God provides for you
• so that...may successfully
• devil
• all of his armor...every spiritual resource
• Just as a soldier puts on...to be ready to fight his enemy, you should use
Ephesians 6:12

**flesh and blood (ULT)**

**other human beings (UST)**

This expression refers to people, not spirits who do not have human bodies. (See: Synecdoche)

against...the world-controllers of this darkness (ULT)

against...to rule over the people doing evil things...in this evil time (UST)

Here it is implied that “the powers” refers to powerful spiritual beings. Here “darkness” is a metaphor for things that are evil. Alternate translation: “against the powerful spiritual beings that rule over people during this present evil time” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- heavenly places
- flesh
- authorities
- blood
- spiritual forces
- evil
- darkness
- rulers

**Translation Words - UST**

- air
- other human beings
- who have authority
- other human beings
- spirits
- evil
- in...evil time
- demons

ULT

12 For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the world-controllers of this darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places.

UST

12 Remember that we are not fighting against other human beings. Instead, we are fighting against the demons who have authority to rule over the people doing evil things in this evil time, that is, against the evil spirits who live in the air.
Ephesians 6:13

Therefore put on the whole armor of God (ULT)
That is why you must use well all of the spiritual resources that God has given you, like a soldier who puts on all of his armor (UST)

Christians should use the protective resources God gives them in fighting the devil in the same way a soldier puts on armor to protect himself against his enemies. (See: Metaphor)

so that you may be able to withstand in the evil day (ULT)
If you do that, you will be able to resist the evil spirits when they attack you...able (UST)

The words “stand firm” represent successfully resisting or fighting something. Alternate translation: “so that you may be able to resist evil” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- you may be able
- evil
- whole armor
- day

Translation Words - UST

- that God has given you
- you will be able...able
- evil spirits
- spiritual resources...his armor
- when they attack you
Ephesians 6:14

Stand, therefore (ULT)
You must be ready to resist the devil and his evil spirits...To do that (UST)

The words "stand" represents successfully resisting or fighting something. See how you translated “stand firm” in Ephesians 6:13. “So resist evil” (See: Metaphor)

your waist with the truth (ULT)
just as soldiers must always be ready to resist the enemy...keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you (UST)

Truth holds everything together for a believer just as a belt holds the clothing of a soldier together. (See: Metaphor)

the truth...righteousness (ULT)
keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you...act righteously (UST)

We are to know the truth and act in ways that please God.

the breastplate of righteousness (ULT)
act righteously. This will protect you like a soldier’s armor protects his chest (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the gift of righteousness covers a believer’s heart just as a breastplate protects the chest of a soldier or 2) our living as God wants us, gives us a clear conscience that protects our hearts the way a breastplate protects a soldier’s chest. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- righteousness
- the truth
- breastplate
- waist
- having put on

Translation Words - UST

- act righteously
- keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you
- This will protect you like a soldier’s armor protects his chest
- just as soldiers must always be ready to resist the enemy
- continue to
Ephesians 6:15

and having shod your feet with the readiness of the gospel of peace (ULT)
Just like a soldier who keeps his boots on, be ready to go anywhere you are needed for the sake of the good news that tells people how to be at peace with God (UST)

Just as a soldier wears shoes to give him solid footing, the believer must have solid knowledge of the gospel of peace in order to be ready to proclaim it. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
• gospel
• peace

Translation Words - UST
• for the sake of the good news
• that tells people how to be at peace with God
Ephesians 6:16

In all circumstances take up the shield of faith (ULT)
Just as a soldier holds up a shield...you must keep
trusting firmly in the Lord at all times (UST)

The believer must use the faith that God gives for protection when
the devil attacks, just as a soldier uses a shield to protect him from
enemy attacks. (See: Metaphor)

The flaming arrows of the evil one (ULT)
The flaming arrows that his enemy shoots at him...of
the things that your enemy, Satan, the evil one, will try
to do to harm you spiritually (UST)

The attacks of the devil against a believer are like flaming arrows
shot at a soldier by an enemy. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- you will be able
- evil one
- faith
- to put out
- shield

Translation Words - UST

- will protect you
- his enemy...your enemy, Satan, the evil one
- keep trusting firmly in the Lord
- to stop
- shield
Ephesians 6:17

Take...the...helmet of salvation (ULT)
as a soldier relies on a helmet to protect his head, rely
on the fact that God has saved you...uses...use (UST)

Salvation given by God protects the believer's mind just as a helmet
protects the head of a soldier. (See: Metaphor)

the...sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God (ULT)
as a soldier...a helmet to protect his head...just as a
soldier...a sword to defeat his enemies...the weapon...
that God's Spirit gives you, which is the message that
comes from God (UST)

The writer speaks of God's instructions to his people as if they were a
sword that his people could use to fight an enemy, (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• salvation
• of God
• the word of God
• Spirit
• sword

Translation Words - UST

• the fact that God has saved you
• that comes from God
• the message that comes from God
• that God's Spirit gives you
• just as a soldier...a sword to defeat his enemies...the weapon

ULT

17 Take the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.

UST

17 Also, as a soldier relies on a helmet to protect his head, rely on the fact that God has saved you, and just as a soldier uses a sword to defeat his enemies, use the weapon that God's Spirit gives you, which is the message that comes from God.
Ephesians 6:18

With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit

“Pray at all times in the Spirit as you pray and make specific requests”

To...this end (ULT)
To be most effective (UST)

“For this reason” or “Keeping this in mind.” This refers to the attitude of taking God's armor.

and...at...be watchful...all perseverance...requests for all the saints (ULT)
and...always...keep watching to see what God is doing...and be persistent...as you continue to pray...for all of God’s people (UST)

“persevere in being alert, and pray for all God's holy people” or “pray with constant alertness for all the believers”

Translation Words - ULT

- saints
- the Spirit
- prayer
- request
- pray
- requests
- times
- perseverance

Translation Words - UST

- God's people
- let God's Spirit direct you
- Whenever you pray to God
- request things from him
- in how you pray and what you pray for
- as you continue to pray
- always
- and be persistent
Ephesians 6:19

Connecting Statement:

In his closing, Paul asks them to pray for his boldness in telling the gospel while he is in prison and says he is sending Tychicus to comfort them.

that a message may be given to me (ULT)
that God would tell me what I should say (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God might give me the word" or "God might give me the message" (See: Active or Passive)

when I open my mouth. Pray that I might make known with boldness

“when I speak. Pray that I boldly explain”

I open my mouth (ULT)
I speak (UST)

This is a metonym for speaking. Alternate translation: “speak” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• gospel
• boldness
• mystery
• to make known

Translation Words - UST

• good news
• boldly
• that people did not know before
• in order that I may...tell others...about the Messiah
Ephesians 6:20

for which I am an ambassador in chains (ULT)
It is because I have been telling people about the Messiah that I am now representing him here in prison (UST)

The words “in chains” are a metonym for being in prison. Alternate translation: “I am now in prison because I am a representative of the gospel” (See: Metonymy)

so that in it I may speak boldly, as it is appropriate for me to speak (ULT)
Pray that as I continue to tell others about the Messiah, I may speak boldly, because that is how I ought to speak (UST)

The word “pray” is understood from verse 19. Alternate translation: “so pray that whenever I teach the gospel, I will speak it as boldly as I should” or “pray that I may speak the gospel as boldly as I should” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• I may speak boldly
• I am an ambassador
• as

Translation Words - UST

• I may speak boldly
• that I am now representing him
• because
Ephesians 6:21

Tychicus (ULT)
Tychicus (UST)

Tychicus was one of several men who served with Paul. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- brother
- servant
- faithful
- beloved
- in the Lord
- Tychicus
- may know
- will tell

Translation Words - UST

- the Lord Jesus
- a fellow believer
- he serves
- faithfully
- whom we all love very much
- the Lord Jesus
- Tychicus
- may know about
- will tell

ULT

21 So that you also may know the things concerning me, how I am doing, Tychicus, the beloved brother and faithful servant in the Lord, will tell you everything,

UST

21 Now in order that you may know about what is happening with me and what I am doing, Tychicus will tell you everything that is happening here. He is a fellow believer whom we all love very much, and he serves the Lord Jesus faithfully.
Ephesians 6:22

so that...your hearts may be encouraged (ULT)
That...I want him to comfort and encourage you (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metonym for people’s inner beings. Alternate translation: “so that he may encourage you” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• hearts
• I have sent
• may be encouraged
• you may know

Translation Words - UST

• you
• I am sending...with this letter
• I want him to comfort and encourage
• I want you to know

ULT

22 whom I have sent to you for this very purpose, so that you may know the things about us and your hearts may be encouraged.

UST

22 That is the reason that I am sending him to you with this letter; I want you to know how we are, and I want him to comfort and encourage you.
Ephesians 6:23

Connecting Statement:
Paul closes his letter to the Ephesian believers with a blessing of peace and grace on all believers who love Christ.

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus Christ
• the Lord
• love
• brothers
• God
• God the Father
• faith
• Christ
• Peace

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus the Messiah
• the Lord
• will enable you to love each other
• fellow believers
• I pray that God
• I pray that God...our Father
• and to continue to trust in God
• the Messiah
• may give...a peaceful spirit

ULT
23 Peace to the brothers, and love with faith from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

UST
23 I pray that God our Father and the Lord Jesus the Messiah may give to all of you fellow believers a peaceful spirit and will enable you to love each other and to continue to trust in God.
Ephesians 6:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Grace be
- Jesus Christ
- Lord
- love
- Christ

**Translation Words - UST**

- I pray that God will continue to act kindly
- Jesus the Messiah
- Lord
- who...love
- the Messiah

ULT
24 *Grace be* with all those who *love* our *Lord Jesus Christ* with incorruptibility.

UST
24 *I pray that God will continue to act kindly* to you and to all people who steadfastly *love* our *Lord Jesus the Messiah*. 
Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its weight?” could be expressed as “How much does it weigh?” or “How heavy is it?”

Examples from the Bible

...from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.
Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...from childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But being godly and content is very beneficial.
But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house have been saved...

Today God has saved the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness
to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them.

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:4)
Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)
This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

Apostrophe

Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, ‘See,...on you they will burn human bones.”’ (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, ‘See,...on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: “This is what Yahweh says about this altar. ‘See,...they will burn people’s bones on it.’”

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on them
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

**Description**

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

**Examples from the Bible**

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But
Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of
g judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed
that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all assumed
knowledge.

An important piece of implicit information here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more
severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged because they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually
clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders.
This was assumed knowledge that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying
this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is implicit
information that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important
implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and
leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is
missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then
   provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then
   state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to
   the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide
that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The
assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but

the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre
and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at

the day of judgment than for you.

or:

...it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than

for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands
when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you.

or:
At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about: [[rc/en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]
**Double Negatives**

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

**Description**

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “un happy,” “im possible,” and “use less.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It is <strong>not</strong> that we do <strong>not</strong> have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>And this better confidence did <strong>not</strong> happen <strong>without</strong> the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be sure of this—wicked people will <strong>not</strong> go <strong>un</strong> punished (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Reason this is a translation issue**

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No vi a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

**Examples from the Bible**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>...in order <strong>not</strong> to be <strong>unfruitful</strong>. (Titus 3:14 ULT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This means “so that they will be fruitful”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All things were made through him and <strong>without</strong> him there was <strong>not</strong> one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.
Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely" or "absolutely."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

| For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT) |
| “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.” |

...in order not to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

| “…so that they may be fruitful.” |

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

| Be sure of this—wicked people will not go un punished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT) |
| “Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished...” |

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

| “All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.” |

(Next we recommend you learn about: [rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs])

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:15)
Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

- King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

  The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

- ...he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

  This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

- You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

  This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

- ...as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

  This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

- You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

  “You have decided to prepare false things to say.”
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)
- “King David was very old.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- ...a lamb without blemish and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”
- “…a lamb without any blemish at all...”

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:4; 2:1; 3:10; 5:19; 5:27; 6:5)
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Description**

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

**Examples from the Bible**

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

**we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “**us**”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)
When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:11; 1:12)
Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The singular form refers to one person, and the plural form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the formal form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the informal form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: Introduction to Ephesians; Ephesians 1:1; 5:14; 6:1)
How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important. For example:

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
• Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
• Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
• Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

**Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’), and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi
...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

The footnote would look like:
[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.
Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses exaggeration. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

- They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULT)
- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.
- Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULT)
- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

- The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)
- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.
- And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)
- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean exactly “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)
Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed...
(Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, “Everyone is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, “Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies.” (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.

(1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

or:

Many of the country of Judea and many of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)
The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:5)
Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning.

Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

- He resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)
- I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)
- Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose

An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

- Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
- The children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”
This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all belong to the same nation.

He resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter my house.

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

“My eyes grow dim from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my eyes out

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:6; 4:12; 6:5; 6:19)
Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Exclusive

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)
In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

(Next we recommend you learn about:)

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:3; 1:5; 2:14; 2:18; 3:20)
Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else’s words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else’s belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, “People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.” (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of “righteous people,” he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God’s commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee’s sin more obvious and startling.

“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; “the number of your days is so large!” (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God’s questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.
Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker’s words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God’s commandment so you may keep your tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God’s commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call people who think that they are righteous to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because they cannot speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.
Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Litotes

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:21)
Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are not the least among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

(1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
“Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”
“Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:16)
Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“\text{I am the Alpha and the Omega,} \text{ says the Lord God,} \text{ the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.} \text{(Revelation 1:8, ULT)}$

\text{I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End.} \text{(Revelation 22:13, ULT)}$

\text{Alpha and Omega} \text{ are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.} \text{(Matthew 11:25 ULT)}$

\text{Heaven and earth} \text{ is a merism that includes everything that exists.} \text{(Matthew 11:25 ULT)}$

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

\text{From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.} \text{(Psalm 113:3 ULT)}$

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

\text{He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.} \text{(Psalm 115:13)}$

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

\text{I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth} \text{(Matthew 11:25 ULT)}$

\text{I praise you, Father, Lord of everything...}
From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh’s name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.

He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:19)
Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the Topic. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the Image to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the Idea that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the Point of Comparison.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The Topic, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The Image, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The Idea, the abstract concept or quality that the physical Image brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the Image and the Topic are similar. Often, the Idea of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the Idea himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical Image to apply an abstract Idea to the speaker’s Topic.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a Topic, with at least one Point of Comparison (Idea) between the Topic and the Image. Often in metaphors, the Topic and the Image are explicitly stated, but the Idea is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the Topic and the Image and to figure out for themselves the Idea that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table leg”, “family tree”, “book leaf” (meaning a page in
a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going up,” “A highly intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going down,” and “I am feeling very low.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat up.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us go ahead with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You defend your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A flow of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

**Active Metaphors**

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
> (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.
Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central **Idea** of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

**Translation Principles**

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

**Examples from the Bible**

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you”, the **Topic**) as if they were cows (the **Image**). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**, and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The **Topic(s)** are “we” and “you,” and the **Image(s)** are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The **Idea** being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**
Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

**Translation Strategies**

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the Idea) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the Idea plainly without using a metaphor.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation Strategies</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Passive metaphor</td>
<td>Jairus fell at his feet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Active metaphor</td>
<td>It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

(4) If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

(5) If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
I will make you become fishers of men.

(Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become people who gather men. Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

**Metonymy**

**Description**

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

- and the **blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

- He took the **cup** in the same way after supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

**Metonymy can be used**

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

**Reason this is a translation issue**

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

**Examples from the Bible**

- The Lord God will give him the **throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

- Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

- ...who warned you to flee from the **wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

**Translation Strategies**

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

“He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

“The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David.”

who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

“who warned you to flee from God’s coming punishment?”

To learn about some common metonyms, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonyms.

Parallelism

Description

In parallelism two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles’ letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God’s word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere, keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.
I lift up my voice to Yahweh, and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous, but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath, but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:15)
Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding:
their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying, “Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said “the Lord came.”

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

For to us a child has been born
,
, to us a son has been given; (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

“For to us a child will be born, to us a son will be given;
(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I am about to hand over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I am handing over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:6)
Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

**Description**

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

**Purposes of Simile**

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

**Examples from the Bible**

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.
Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves 

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

- See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

- For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

(Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

- For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings,

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

- How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

- If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)
See, I send you out among *people who will want to harm you*.

*How often did I long to gather your children together, just* as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

*How often I wanted to protect you*, but you refused!

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:1)
Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No". Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:20)
Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...?” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

* Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
* Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul” exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands
Next we recommend you learn about:

Metonymy

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:14; 6:12)
Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

10 See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. 11 [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then every man went to his own house.... 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”] [2]

[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.
He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” 16[1]

[1] The best ancient copies omit v. 16. If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

[1] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original]]

(Go back to: Introduction to Ephesians)
Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, “This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father loves the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I love the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory, the very character of his essence. He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)
Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human “father” and “son.” In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

(See God the Father and Son of God pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating “Father” and “Son.”)

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:13)
When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes his father rejoice
but a foolish child brings grief to his mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

• In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
• In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of men and women.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and have a child for his brother.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)
Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise man
dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)
“The wise person dies just like the fool dies.”
“Wise people die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers
, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
“For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers and sisters, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”
(Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
“If people want to follow me, they must deny themselves, take up their cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:5)
admonish, warned, aware

Definition:

The term “admonish” means to firmly warn or advise someone.

• Usually “admonish” means to advise someone not to do something.
• In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
• The word “admonish” could be translated as “encourage not to sin” or “urge someone to not sin.”

Bible References:

• Nehemiah 09:32-34

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2094, H5749, G3560, G3867, G5537

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:4)
adoption, adopt, adopted

Definition:

The terms “adopt” and “adoption” refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses “adoption” and “adopt” in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase “experience adoption as sons” could be translated as “be adopted by God as his children” or “become God’s (spiritual) children.”
- To “wait for the adoption of sons” could be translated as “look forward to becoming God’s children” or “wait expectantly for God to receive as children.”
- The phrase “adopt them” could be translated as “receive them as his own children” or “make them his own (spiritual) children.”

(See also: heir, inherit, spirit)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 01:5
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Romans 08:14-15
- Romans 08:23
- Romans 09:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5206

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:5)
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:11)
age, aged

Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G165, G1074

(Back to Ephesians 1:21; 2:2; 2:7; 3:9; 3:11; 3:21)
ambassador, representative

Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. The word is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as “representative.”

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term “representative” refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ’s “ambassadors” or “representatives” since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “official representative” or “appointed messenger” or “chosen representative” or “God’s appointed representative.”
- A “delegation of ambassadors” could be translated as “some official messengers” or “group of appointed representatives” or “official party of people to speak for all people.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: messenger)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 06:20
- Luke 14:31-33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3887, H4135, H4136, H4397, H6735, H6737, G4243

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:20)
amen, truly

Definition:
The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

• When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
• In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
• When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
• Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

• Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
• When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
• When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
• The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

• Deuteronomy 27:15
• John 05:19
• Jude 01:24-25
• Matthew 26:33-35
• Philemon 01:23-25
• Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H543, G281

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:21)
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader of a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(See also: Ephesians 5:31; 6:2; 6:4)
apostle, apostleship

Definition:
The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 26:10 Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his apostles. The apostles traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- 30:01 Jesus sent his apostles to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- 38:02 Judas was one of Jesus’ apostles. He was in charge of the apostles’ money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- 43:13 The disciples devoted themselves to the apostles’ teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- 46:08 Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

(See also: Ephesians 1:1; 2:20; 3:5; 4:11)
armor, armory

Definition:
The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: faith, Holy Spirit, peace, save, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 06:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22
- Nehemiah 04:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:11; 6:13)
asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:14
- Acts 07:60
- Daniel 12:02
- Psalms 044:23
- Romans 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:14)
authority

Definition:
The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, obey, power, ruler)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:21; 2:2; 3:10; 6:12)
baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:
In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:03 When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John baptized them. Many religious leaders also came to be baptized by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- 24:06 The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John.
- 24:07 John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to baptize you. You should baptize me instead.”
- 42:10 So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- 43:12 About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- 45:11 As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be baptized?”
- 46:05 Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- 49:14 Jesus invites you to believe in him and be baptized.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G907

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:5)
bear, bearer, carry

Facts:
The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: burden, Elisha, endure, fruit, iniquity, report, sheep, strength, testimony, testimony)

Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:2)
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe
   - To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
   - To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in
   - To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
   - When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
   - The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
   - To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

   In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.
   - The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
   - The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

   The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.
   - In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
   - A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)
Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus! It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

*(Go back to: Ephesians 1:13; 1:19)*
beloved

Definition:
The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:1; 6:21)
bind, bond, bound

Definition:
The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 4:3)
blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

• Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
• A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
• According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

• This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

• 1 Thessalonians 02:10
• 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
• 2 Peter 03:14
• Colossians 01:22
• Genesis 17:1-2
• Philippians 02:15
• Philippians 03:06

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H5352, H5355, H8535, G273, G274, G298, G299, G338, G410, G423

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:4; 5:27)
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 074:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:31)
**bless, blessed, blessing**

**Definition:**

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 01:07 God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- 01:15 God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- 01:16 So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 04:04 “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- 04:07 Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- 07:03 Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
• **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:3)
blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's blood.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had blood around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's blood.
- **13:09** The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:7; 2:13; 6:12)
boast, boastful

Definition:
The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one’s work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- James 03:14
- James 04:15-17
- Psalms 044:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1740, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:9)
body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: head, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

bold, boldness, emboldened

Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: confidence, good news, redeem)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
- Acts 04:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:12; 6:19; 6:20)
**bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee**

**Definition:**

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:14)
breastplate, breastpiece

Definition:

The term “breastplate” refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term “breastpiece” refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A “breastplate” used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The “breastpiece” worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term “breastplate” could include “metal protective chest covering” or “armor piece protecting the chest.”
- The term “breastpiece” could be translated with a word that means “priestly clothing covering the chest” or “priestly garment piece” or “front piece of priest’s clothing.”

(See also: armor, high priest, pierce, priest, temple, warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:08
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Isaiah 59:17
- Revelation 09:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2833, H8302, G2382

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:14)
brother

Definition:
The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:21; 6:23)
call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:18; 2:11; 4:1; 4:4)
children, child, offspring

Definition:
The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God's spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, seed, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 2:3; 4:14; 5:1; 5:8; 6:1; 6:4)
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:4)
Christ, Messiah

Facts:
The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:07 The Messiah was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- 17:08 As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the Messiah came, almost 1,000 years.
- 21:01 From the very beginning, God planned to send the Messiah.
- 21:04 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own descendants.
- 21:05 The Messiah would start the New Covenant.
- 21:06 God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 43:07 “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
• 43:09 “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”
• 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
• 46:06 Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the Messiah.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, believe, Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **46:10** So the church in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The Church has been growing.
Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:22; 3:10; 3:21; 5:23; 5:24; 5:25; 5:27; 5:29; 5:32)
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God's people” or “rebellious like those who don't belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** “You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:11)
citizen, citizenship

Definition:

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as “inhabitant” or “official resident.”
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called “citizens” of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God's kingdom.

(See: kingdom, Paul, province, Rome)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 03:03
- Luke 15:15
- Luke 19:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:12; 2:19)
clean, wash

Definition:
The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God's eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

282 / 500
Colossians 03:05
1 Thessalonians 04:07
James 04:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 5:5; 5:26)
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:
When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

• In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
• To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
• This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:
• If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
• If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
• The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:
• Luke 24:49

Word Data:
• Strong’s: H899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:24; 6:11; 6:14)
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:22)
command, commandment

**Definition:**

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

**Translation Suggestions**

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

**Bible References:**

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: Ephesians 2:15; 6:2)*
commit, committed, commitment

Definition:
The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, faithful, promise, sin)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:19)
confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULT often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: believe, believe, bold, faithful, hope, trust)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H982, H983, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:12)
**cornerstone**

**Definition:**

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:11
- Ephesians 02:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

*Go back to: Ephesians 2:20*
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:
The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

Bible References:
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 06:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 014:1

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G861, G1311, G2704, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:22; 4:29)
covenant

Definition:
In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

• This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
• When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
• Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
• Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
• In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
• In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

• God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
• This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
• The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
• God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
• The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
• Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
• Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
• The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
• The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

• Genesis 09:12
• Genesis 17:07
• Genesis 31:44
• Exodus 34:10-11
• Joshua 24:24-26
• 2 Samuel 23:5
• 2 Kings 18:11-12
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.’
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:12)
create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15
- Galatians 06:15
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:4; 2:10; 2:15; 3:9; 4:24)
**CROSS**

**Definition:**
In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: crucify, Rome)

**Bible References:**
- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the cross.
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

**Word Data:**
- Strong's: G4716

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:16)
**darkness**

**Definition:**

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, righteous)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:18; 5:8; 5:11; 6:12)
day

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:30; 5:16; 6:13)
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 4:14; 4:22; 5:6)
die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:
The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death
   - To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
   - The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death
   - Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
   - This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
   - This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:
   - To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
   - In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
   - Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
   - In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
   - In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
   - The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
   - The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:
- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**,” and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die”**.
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:20; Notes; 2:1; 2:5; 5:14)
discipline, self-discipline

Definition:
The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God's will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one's own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

Bible References:

- Ephesians 06:4
- Hebrews 12:05
- Proverbs 19:18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4148, G1468

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:4)
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: authority, evil, sin, obey)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 03:07
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:11 God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and disobedied me."
- 13:07 If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 16:02 Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- 35:12 “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never disobeyed you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:2; 5:6)
The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching.” It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God – Father, Son and Holy Spirit – including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: teach)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3948, G1319, G1322, G2085

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:14)
**dominion**

**Definition:**

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(See back to: Ephesians 1:21)
drunk, drunkard

Facts:
The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 07:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:18)
**earth, earthen, earthly**

**Definition:**

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: spirit, world)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

**Word Data:**


(See also: Ephesians 1:10; 3:15; 4:9; 6:3)
envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:19; 5:3; 5:5)
Ephesus, Ephesian

Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, Paul, Timothy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Timothy 01:03
- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 19:01
- Ephesians 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2179, G2180, G2181

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:1)
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:
The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David's throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David's throne lasting forever could be translated as “David's descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: Ephesians 5 General Notes)
evangelist

Definition:
An “evangelist” is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

- The literal meaning of “evangelist” is “someone who preaches the good news.”
- Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God's kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
- All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
- Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called “evangelists.”

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “evangelist” could be translated as “someone who preaches the good news” or “teacher of the good news” or “person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)” or “good news proclaimer.”

(See also: good news, spirit, gift)

Bible References:
- 2 Timothy 04:05
- Ephesians 04:11-13

Word Data:
- Strong’s: G2099

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:11)
evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person's character, “wicked” may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 03:01 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
- 04:02 God saw that if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:02 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:01 But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.
- 29:08 The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- 45:02 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 4:31; 5:16; 6:12; 6:13)
**exhort, exhortation**

**Definition:**

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "exhort" could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term "exhort" should be translated differently than "encourage," which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 1 Timothy 05:02
- Luke 03:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G3867, G3870, G3874, G4389

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:1)
**faith**

**Definition:**

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: *abstractnouns*)
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: *believe, faithful*)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little faith, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your faith has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: *Ephesians 1:15; Notes; 2:8; 3:12; 3:17; Notes; 4:5; 4:13; 6:16; 6:23*)
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

**Definition:**
To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained *faithful* to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still *faithful* to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain *faithful* to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and *faithfulness* for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's *unfaithfulness*, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked *faithfully* for you!"
- **49:17** But God is *faithful* and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain *faithful* to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:1; 6:21)
family, household

Definition:
The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:15)
fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term “dread” refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere;” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
• The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
• The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or, “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or, “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

• 1 John 04:18
• Acts 02:43
• Acts 19:15-17
• Genesis 50:21
• Isaiah 11:3-5
• Job 06:14
• Jonah 01:09
• Luke 12:05
• Matthew 10:28
• Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 5:33; 6:5)
fellowship

Definition:
In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

• In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
• Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
• The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
• Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

Translation Suggestions:

• Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

Bible References:

• 1 John 01:03
• Acts 02:40-42
• Philippians 01:3-6
• Philippians 02:01
• Philippians 03:10
• Psalms 055:12-14

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2266, H8667, G2842, G2844, G3352, G4790

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:11)
filled with the Holy Spirit

Definition:

The term “filled with the Holy Spirit” is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God's will.

- The expression “filled with” is an expression that often means “controlled by.”
- People are “filled with the Holy Spirit” when they follow the Holy Spirit’s leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “empowered by the Holy Spirit” or “controlled by the Holy Spirit.” But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
- A sentence such as “he was filled with the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “he was living fully by the Spirit’s power” or “he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit” or “the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely.”
- This term is similar in meaning to the expression “live by the Spirit,” but “filled with the Holy Spirit” emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:31
- Acts 05:17
- Acts 06:8-9
- Luke 01:15
- Luke 01:39-41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:18)
flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: Ephesians 2 General Notes; 2:3; 2:11; 2:14; 5:29; 5:31; 6:5; 6:12)
fool, foolish, folly

Definition:
The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

Bible References:
- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:4; 5:17)
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 07:10 But Esau had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- 13:15 Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would forgive the people. God listened to Moses and forgave them.
- 17:13 David repented of his sin and God forgave him.
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
29:01 One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me?”

29:08 I forgave your debt because you begged me.

38:05 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:7; 4:32; Notes)
found, founder, foundation

Definition:
The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:
- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:
- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:4; 2:20; 3:17)
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 6:8)
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—“that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul's expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 5:9; 5:11)
generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, evil, ancestor)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:5; 3:21)
Gentile

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Jew)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:16
- Luke 02:32
- Matthew 05:47
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672

(See also: Ephesians 2:11; 3:1; 3:6; 3:8; 4:17)
gift

Definition:
The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return.

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:
- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: spirit, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:
- 1 Corinthians 12:01
- 2 Samuel 11:08
- Acts 08:20
- Acts 10:04
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 01:17
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 08:4

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:8; 3:7; 4:7; 4:8)
glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

• In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
• People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
• The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

• The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

• God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
• Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
• The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
• The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
• The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
• “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
• The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
• The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

• Exodus 24:17
• Numbers 14:9-10
• Isaiah 35:02
• Luke 18:43
• Luke 02:09
• John 12:28
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:


God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”

 NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** God created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15** God made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** “I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you.”
- **09:14** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the Most High God who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!”
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **28:07** “There is only one who is good, and that is God.”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **50:16** But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:


**God the Father, heavenly Father, Father**

**Facts:**

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:08** “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of God the Father.”
- **50:10** “Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1, H2, G3962
(Go back to: Ephesians 1:2; 1:3; 1:17; 2:18; 3:14; 4:6; 5:20; 6:23)
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:
A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:


*(Go back to: Ephesians 5:5)*
good news, gospel

Definition:
The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:
- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God's message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, sacrifice, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:23
- Galatians 01:06
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14
- Philippians 02:22
- Romans 01:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 23:06 The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- 26:03 Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord's favor."
- 45:10 Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- 46:10 Then they sent them off to preach the good news about Jesus in many other places.
- 47:01 One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- 47:13 The good news about Jesus kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- 50:01 For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah.
- 50:02 When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- 50:03 Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2097, G2098, G4283
(Go back to: Ephesians 1:13; 3:6; 6:15; 6:19)
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:
The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God plantedâ€¦ the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
“Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good’? There is only one who is good, and that is God.”

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:5; 2:10; 4:28; 4:29; 5:9; 6:8)
grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:2; 1:6; 1:7; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 3:2; 3:7; 3:8; 4:7; 4:29; 6:24)
The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

hard, harden, hardness

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, evil, heart, labor pains, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 4:18)
head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:


(See also: Ephesians 1:22; 4:15; 5:23)
heart

Definition:
The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:18; 3:17; 4:18; 5:19; 6:5; 6:22)
**heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly**

**Definition:**

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach heaven.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from heaven, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(See also: [Ephesians 1:3; 1:10; 1:20; 2:6; 3:10; 3:15; 4:10; 6:9; 6:12](#))
heir

Definition:
An “heir” is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses “heir” in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be “joint heirs” with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as “co-heirs” or “fellow heirs” or “heirs together with.”
- The term “heir” could be translated as “person receiving benefits” or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, inherit)

Bible References:
- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:
- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:6)
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:01 But God's Spirit was there over the water.
- 24:08 When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, the Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- 26:01 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- 26:03 Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:03 They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and they began to speak in other languages.
- 43:08 “And Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit just as he promised he would do. The Holy Spirit is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing.”
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the Holy Spirit.”
- 45:01 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:13; 2:18; 2:22; 3:5; 3:16; 4:3; 4:4; 4:30; 5:18; 6:17; 6:18)
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshipping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:01** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:05** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:4; 1:13; 2:21; 3:5; 4:24; 4:30; 5:27)
honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

Word Data:


(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:2)
hope, hoped

Definition:
Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: bless, confidence, good, obey, trust, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

Word Data:


(See back to: Ephesians 1:18; 2:12; 4:4)
household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:19)
humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don't be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:10 “God will humble everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:2)
imitate, imitator

Definition:

The terms “imitate” and “imitator” refer to copying someone else by acting exactly like that person does.

- Christians are taught to imitate Jesus Christ by obeying God and loving others, just as Jesus did.
- The apostle Paul told the early church to imitate him, just as he imitated Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “imitate” could be translated as “do the same things as” or “follow his example.”
- The expression “be imitators of God” could be translated as “be people who act like God does” or “be people who do the kinds of things God does.”
- “You became imitators of us” could be translated as “You followed our example” or “You are doing the same kinds of godly things that you saw us do.”

Bible References:

- 3 John 01:11
- Matthew 23:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H310, H6213, G1096, G2596, G3401, G3402, G4160

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:1)
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”

- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: Christ, Lord, Jesus, believe, faith)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:05
- 2 Corinthians 02:17
- 2 Timothy 01:01
- Galatians 01:22
- Galatians 02:17
- Philemon 01:06
- Revelation 01:10
- Romans 09:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1519, G2962, G5547

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:
The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person.
An “inheritance” is the thing(s) that is received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

• A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
• God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

• As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
• Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
• Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
• The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
• The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 06:09
• 1 Peter 01:04
• 2 Samuel 21:03
• Acts 07:4-5
• Deuteronomy 20:16
• Galatians 05:21
• Genesis 15:07
• Hebrews 09:15
• Jeremiah 02:07
• Luke 15:11
• Matthew 19:29
• Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 04:06 When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
• 27:01 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
• 35:03 “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my inheritance now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:11; 1:14; 1:18; Notes; 5:5)
Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the Israelites to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain Israelite woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, “This is what the God of Israel says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of Israel complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished Israel again for worshiping idols.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:12)
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God’s Son. The name “Jesus” means “Yahweh saves.” The term “Christ” is a title that means “anointed one” and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as “Jesus Christ” or “Christ Jesus.” These names emphasize that God’s Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him “Jesus” because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages “Jesus” and “Christ” are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, “Jesucristo,” “Jezus Christus,” “Yesus Kristus,” and “Hesukristo” are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term “Christ,” some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term “Messiah” throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:04 The angel said, “You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah.”
- 23:02 “Name him Jesus (which means, ‘Yahweh saves’), because he will save the people from their sins.”
- 24:07 So John baptized him (Jesus), even though Jesus had never sinned.
- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
• **25:08 Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
• **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
• **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
• **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
• **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
• **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
• **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

• Strong's: G2424, G5547

kind [NOT kindness]

Definition:

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:7; 4:32)
**kingdom**

**Definition:**

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: **authority**, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the kingdom of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the kingdom of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:5)
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or “when God reigns as king” or “God's rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God's rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven's reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:02 He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- 28:06 Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.”
- 29:02 Jesus said, “The kingdom of God is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- 34:01 Jesus told many other stories about the kingdom of God. For example, he said, “The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”
- 34:03 Jesus told another story, “The kingdom of God is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”
• 34:04 “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again.”
• 34:05 “The kingdom of God is also like a perfect pearl of great value.”
• 42:09 He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the kingdom of God.
• 49:05 Jesus said that the kingdom of God is more valuable than anything else in the world.
• 50:02 When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

• Strong’s: G932, G2316, G3772

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:5)
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:9; 1:17; 1:18; 3:3; 3:5; 3:10; 3:19; 4:13; 5:5; 6:8; 6:9; 6:19; 6:21; 6:22)
labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

• In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
• A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
• In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
• Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard, labor pains)

Bible References:

• 1 Thessalonians 02:09
• 1 Thessalonians 03:05
• Galatians 04:10-11
• James 05:04
• John 04:38
• Luke 10:02
• Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4866, G4904

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:28)
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:
All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God's law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:
- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the laws that God told to Moses” or “God's laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God's laws” could include “laws from God” or “God's commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God's instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh's laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:
- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 13:07 God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.
- 16:01 After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey God's laws.
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- 27:01 Jesus answered, “What is written in God's law?”
28:01 Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good?’ There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God’s laws.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:15)
**life, live, living, alive**

**Definition:**

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. **Physical life**

   - A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
   - Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
   - It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
   - The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
   - In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. **Eternal life**

   - A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
   - The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God's Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed *life* into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were _living_ in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still *alive*, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] *life* he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal *life*?”
- **35:05** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the *Life*.”
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of *life*, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:18; Notes)
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

**Definition:**

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, righteous, true)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:8; 5:9; 5:13)
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:
The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: Simile)
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

loins, waist

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression "gird up the loins" refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one's robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man's reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- 2 Chronicles 06:09
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

(See back to: Ephesians 6:14)
lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

• This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
• Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

• In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
• In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
• The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
• In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
• Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
• In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
• For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

• This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
• When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
• If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
• When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

• Genesis 39:02
• Joshua 03:9-11
• Psalms 086:15-17
• Jeremiah 27:04
• Lamentations 02:02
• Ezekiel 18:29
• Daniel 09:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

• 25:05 But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'”

• 25:07 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'”

• 26:03 This is the year of the Lord's favor.

• 27:02 The law expert replied that God's law says, “Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”

• 31:05 Then Peter said to Jesus, “Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”

• 43:09 “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”

• 47:03 By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her masters as a fortuneteller.

• 47:11 Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

• Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
   - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
   - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
   - In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
   - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
   - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16
• Matthew 10:37
• Nehemiah 09:32-34
• Philippians 01:09
• Song of Solomon 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 27:02 The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love your neighbor as yourself."
• 33:08 "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his love for God."
• 36:05 As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I love.”
• 39:10 “Everyone who loves the truth listens to me.”
• 47:01 She (Lydia) loved and worshiped God.
• 48:01 When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve loved each other, and they loved God.
• 49:03 He (Jesus) taught that you need to love other people the same way you love yourself.
• 49:04 He (Jesus) also taught that you need to love God more than you love anything else, including your wealth.
• 49:07 Jesus taught that God loves sinners very much.
• 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
• 49:13 God loves you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:


lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: adultery, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:28

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 2:3; 4:22)
**manager, steward, stewardship**

**Definition:**

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: servant)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 08:03
- Luke 16:02
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 01:07

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G2012, G3621, G3623

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:10; 3:2; 3:9)
**member, body parts**

**Definition:**

The term “member” refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as “members” of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the “head” of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called “members” of these groups.

(See also: body, Pharisee, council)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:02
- Romans 12:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G1010, G3196, G3609

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:25; 5:30)
mercy, merciful

Definition:
The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 19:16 They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and mercy to others.
- 19:17 He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- 20:12 The Persian Empire was strong but merciful to the people it conquered.
- 27:11 Then Jesus asked the law expert, "What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?" He replied, "The one who was merciful to him."
- 32:11 But Jesus said to him, "No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had mercy on you."
- 34:09 "But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, 'God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.'"
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 2:4)
might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:
The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:19; 6:10)
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:3; 4:17; 4:23)
multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

• God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
• Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
• Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
• The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
• To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

• Deuteronomy 08:01
• Genesis 09:07
• Genesis 22:17
• Hosea 04:6-7

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:8)
mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: Christ, Gentile, good news, Jew, true)

Bible References:

- Colossians 04:2-4
- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1219, H7328, G3466

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:9; 3:3; 3:4; 3:9; 5:32; 6:19)
**name**

**Definition:**

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person's reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: *metonymy*).

**Translation Suggestions:**

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: *call*)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:21; 3:15; 5:20)
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: adversary, parable, people group, Samaria)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:25)
obey, obedient

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal.

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:1; 6:5)
on high, in the highest

Definition:

The terms “on high” and “in the highest” are expressions that usually mean “in heaven.”

- Another meaning for the expression “in the highest” could be “the most honored.”
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression “in the highest tree,” which means “in the tallest tree.”
- The expression “on high” could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird’s nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as “high in the sky” or “at the top of a tall tree.”
- The word “high” could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression “from on high” could be translated as “from heaven.”

(See also: heaven, honor)

Bible References:

- Lamentations 01:13
- Psalms 069:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4605, H4791, H7682, G1722, G5308, G5310, G5311

(See also: Ephesians 4:8)
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:15)
**partial, partiality**

**Definition:**

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4383

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:9)
pastor

Definition:
The term “pastor” is literally the same word as “shepherd.” It is used as a title for someone who is the spiritual leader for a group of believers.

- In English Bible versions, “pastor” only occurs one time, in the book of Ephesians. It is the same word as is translated as “shepherd” elsewhere.
- In some languages, the word for “pastor” is the same as the word for “shepherd.”
- It is also the same word as is used to refer to Jesus as the “good Shepherd.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word for “shepherd” in the project language.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “shepherding Christian leader.”

(See also: shepherd, sheep)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 04:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7462, G4166

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:11)
patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:2)
Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name “Paul.”
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 08:03
- Acts 09:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 01:01
- Philemon 01:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 45:06 A young man named Saul agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- 46:01 Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- 46:02 While Saul was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you persecute me?”
- 46:05 So Ananias went to Saul, placed his hands on him, and said, “Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.” Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- 46:09 Barnabas and Saul went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- 47:01 As Saul traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, “Paul.”
- 47:14 Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3972, G4569

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:1; 3:1)
peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:
The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:06 God had commanded the Israelites not to make a peace treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- 15:12 Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- 16:03 Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- 21:13 He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace, forever.
- 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:2; 2:14; 2:15; 2:17; 4:3; 6:15; 6:23)
perfect, perfected, perfection, complete

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:13)
persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: patient, trial)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:11
- Ephesians 06:18
- James 05:9-11
- Luke 08:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3115, G4343, G5281

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:18)
pledge, pledged

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- To “pledge” could be translate as to “formally commit to” or to “strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: promise, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:4-5
- Exodus 22:26
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:14)
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:


(See back to: Ephesians 1:14)
power, powerful, powerfully

**Definition:**

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that power had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
Word Data:


praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:
To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- 17:08 When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and praised God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- 22:07 Zechariah said, “Praise God, because he has remembered his people!
- 43:13 They (disciples) enjoyed praising God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- 47:08 They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of praise to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:6; 1:12; 1:14)
pray, prayer

Definition:
The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses prayed for them, and God listened to his prayer and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal prayed to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also prayed to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and prayed with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:16; 6:18)
**preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation**

**Definition:**
To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

**Bible References:**
- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
• **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

• **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

**Word Data:**

• Strong’s:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:17; 3:8)
predestine, predestined

Definition:

The terms “predestine” and “predestined” refer to deciding or planning beforehand that something will happen.

• This term especially refers to God predestining people to receive eternal life.
• Sometimes the word “foreordain” is used, which also means to decide beforehand.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “predestine” could also be translated as “decide before” or “decide ahead of time.”
• The term “predestined” could be translated as “decided long ago” or “planned ahead of time” or “decided beforehand.”
• A phrase such as “predestined us” could be translated as “decided long ago that we” or “already decided ahead of time that we.”
• Note that the translation of this term should be different from the translation of the term “foreknew.”

(See also: foreknew)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 02:6-7

Word Data:

• Strong's: G4309

(Go back to: Ephesians 1 General Notes; 1:5; 1:11)
prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 3:1; 4:1)
promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his promise. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s promise.
- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise.”
- **08:15** The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his promises.
- **50:01** Jesus promised he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:13; 2:12; 3:6; 6:2)
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:
A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophecy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them prophets. The prophets heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
19:17 Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them.
21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
43:05 “This fulfills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
43:07 “This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
48:12 Moses was a great prophet who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 2:20; 3:5; 4:11)
provoke, provoked, provocation

Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

• To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
• When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

Bible References:

• Ezekiel 20:27-29

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:4)
**psalm**

**Definition:**

The term “psalm” refers to a sacred song, often in the form of a poem that was written to be sung.

- The Old Testament Book of Psalms has a collection of these songs written by King David and other Israelites such as Moses, Solomon, and Asaph, among others.
- The psalms were used by the nation of Israel in their worship of God.
- Psalms can be used to express joy, faith, and reverence, as well as pain and sorrow.
- In the New Testament, Christians are instructed to sing psalms to God as a way of worshiping him.

(See also: David, faith, joy, Moses, holy)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 13:33
- Acts 13:35
- Colossians 03:16
- Luke 20:42

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2158, H2167, H4210, G5567, G5568

(See also: Ephesians 5:19)
quench, quenched, unquenchable

Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people.

(See also: fruit, gift, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:19
- Ezekiel 20:47
- Isaiah 01:31
- Jeremiah 21:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1846, H3518, H7665, G762, G4570

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:16)
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:
raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:14 The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also raise him from the dead.
41:05 Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would!

43:07 Although Jesus died, God raised him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.

44:05 You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead.

44:08 Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

48:04 This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.

49:02 He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

49:12 You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:20; 2:6; 5:14)
rebuke

Definition:
The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 5:11; 5:13)
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 45:05 As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- 49:06 He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- 49:10 When Jesus died on the cross, he received your punishment.
- 49:13 God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G356, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:8)
reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

Definition:
To “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “make peace” between people who were formerly enemies of each other. “Reconciliation” is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God's enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus' sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could be translated as “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: peace, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:19
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Matthew 05:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 05:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2398, H3722, G604, G1259, G2433, G2643, G2644

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:16)
redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

• God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
• If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
• These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
• The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
• The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

• Colossians 01:13-14
• Ephesians 01:7-8
• Ephesians 05:16
• Galatians 03:13-14
• Galatians 04:05
• Luke 02:38
• Ruth 02:20

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:7; 1:14; 4:30; 5:16)
reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:
The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:17; 3:3; 3:5; 5:13)
revere, revered, reverence, reverent

Definition:

The term “reverence” refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something. “Revere” someone or something is to show reverence towards that person or thing.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God's commandments.
- This term could also be translated as “fear and honor” or “sincere respect.”

(See also: fear, honor, obey)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:15-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- Isaiah 44:17
- Psalms 005:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3372, H3373, H3374, H4172, H6342, H7812, G127, G1788, G2125, G2412, G5399, G5401

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:21)
right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the position of strength” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: parallelism)
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: accuse, evil, honor, mighty, punish, rebel)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

(See back to: Ephesians 1:20)
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)
Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- 04:08 God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- 17:02 David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 23:01 Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- 50:10 Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:


(Go back to: Introduction to Ephesians; Ephesians 4:24; 5:9; 6:1; 6:14)
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It is means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:21; 2:2; 3:10; 6:12)
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

**Definition:**
In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

**sacrifice**
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

**offering**
- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

**Translation Suggestions**
- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

**Bible References:**
- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
**13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a *sacrifice* to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was *sacrificed* covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.

**17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him *sacrifices*.

**48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only *sacrifice* that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.

**48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a *sacrifice* to die in our place.

**49:11** Because Jesus *sacrificed* himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: Ephesians 5:2)*
saint

Definition:
The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: holy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:06
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2623, H6918, H6922, G40

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:1; 1:15; 1:18; 2:19; 3:8; 3:18; 4:12; 5:3; 6:18)
sanctify, sanctification

Definition:
To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, holy, set apart)

Bible References:
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H6942, G37, G38

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:26)
Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called “Satan” and “the evil one.”

• The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
• Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
• God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
• The name “Satan” means “adversary” or “enemy.”
• The word “devil” means “accuser.”

Translation Suggestions:

• The word “devil” could also be translated as “the accuser” or “the evil one” or “the king of evil spirits” or “the chief evil spirit.”
• “Satan” could be translated as “Opponent” or “Adversary” or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
• These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
• Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil, kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

• 1 John 03:08
• 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
• 1 Timothy 05:15
• Acts 13:10
• Job 01:08
• Mark 08:33
• Zechariah 03:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 21:01 The snake who deceived Eve was Satan. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat Satan completely.
• 25:06 Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
• 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
• 33:06 So Jesus explained, “The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the devil takes the word from him.”
• 38:07 After Judas took the bread, Satan entered into him.
• 48:04 God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush Satan's head, and Satan would wound his heel. This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
• 49:15 God has taken you out of Satan's kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
• 50:09 “The weeds represent the people who belong to the evil one. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the devil.”
• **50:10** “When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering.”

• **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

*(Go back to: Ephesians 4:27; 6:11; 6:16)*
save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm's way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God's rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2
Examples from the Bible stories:

• 09:08 Moses tried to save his fellow Israelite.
• 11:02 God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
• 12:05 Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you.”
• 12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
• 16:17 This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to save them.
• 44:08 “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus!”
• 47:11 The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be saved?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.”
• 49:12 Good works cannot save you.
• 49:13 God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not save anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:13; 2:5; 2:8; 6:17)
Savior, savior

Facts:
The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: deliver, Jesus, save, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:10
- 2 Peter 02:20
- Acts 05:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 01:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3467, G4990

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:23)
seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

To term "seal" means to close an object with something (usually called a "seal") that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a “seal” showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

Bible References:

- Exodus 02:03
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 06:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 05:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:13; 4:30)
send, sent, send out

Definition:
To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: appoint, redeem)

Bible References:
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:22)
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term “serve” generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a “servant:” a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a “servant” and a “slave” than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his *servants* back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The *slave* traders sold Joseph as a *slave* to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** “I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their *slavery* in Egypt.”
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your *servant*.”
- **29:03** “Since the *servant* could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as *slaves* to make payment on his debt.’”
- **35:06** “All my father’s *servants* have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- **47:04** The *slave* girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.
- **50:04** Jesus also said, “A *servant* is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong’s: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8)
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, false god, prostitute, faithful)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:3; 5:5)
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8
Psalms 006:8-10
Psalms 123:03
1 Timothy 05:7-8
1 Timothy 06:13-14
Jeremiah 15:15-16
Job 16:9-10
Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:12)
**shield**

**Definition:**
A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy’s weapons. To “shield” someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the “shield of faith,” which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, obey, Satan, spirit)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 018:35

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

(See back to: Ephesians 6:16)
**sin, sinful, sinner, sinning**

**Definition:**

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God's will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are *sinful* from the time they are children.”
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their *sin* and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both *sinned* against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no *sin*. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's *sin*.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other *sinners* who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of *sins*.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your *sins*.”
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our *sins*!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to *sin*. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your *sins*, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against *sin*.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 2 General Notes; 2:1; 4:26)
son

Definition:
The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase "son of" can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- 04:09 God said, "I will give you a son from your own body."
- 05:05 About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- 05:08 When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his son when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me."
- 09:07 When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son.
- 11:06 God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn sons.
- 18:01 After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule.
- 26:04 "Is this the son of Joseph?" they said.
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 2:2; 3:5; 5:6)
Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:05 The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**.”
- 24:09 God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**.”
- 31:08 The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God**.”
- 37:05 Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**.”
- 42:10 So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God**!”
- 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
Word Data:

• Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:13)
soul, self

Definition:
The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means,”I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:6)
spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a spiritual descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:3; 1:17; 2:2; 4:23; 5:19; Notes; 6:12)
strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:19; 3:16; 3:18; 6:10)
**subject, be subject to, subjection**

**Facts:**
A person is the “subject” of another person if the second person rules over the first. To “be subject to” is to “obey” or to “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: submit)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 02:14-16
- 1 Kings 04:06
- 1 Peter 02:18-20
- Hebrews 02:05
- Proverbs 12:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, H5927, G350, G1379, G1396, G1777, G3663, G5292, G5293

(See also: Ephesians 1:22; 5:21; 5:24)
sword, swordsman

Definition:
A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:17)
teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

• A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
• When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
• Jesus' disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
• The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
• The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God's instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
• The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
• Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
• Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

• 1 Timothy 01:03
• Acts 02:40-42
• John 07:14
• Luke 04:31
• Matthew 04:23
• Psalms 032:08

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:21)
teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

• In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
• People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
• In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

• The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
• Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: disciple, preach)

Bible References:

• Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
• Ephesians 04:11-13
• Galatians 06:6-8
• Habakkuk 02:18
• James 03:02
• John 01:37-39
• Luke 06:40
• Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 27:01 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
• 28:01 One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?”
• 37:02 After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But Teacher,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
• 38:14 Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, Teacher,” and kissed him.
• 49:03 Jesus was also a great teacher, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:11)
temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God's holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple. God came and was present in the Temple, and he lived there with his people.
- 20:07 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures.
- 20:13 When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the Temple and the wall around the city of the city and the Temple.
- 25:04 Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the Temple and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- 40:07 When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the Temple was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

465 / 500
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:10)
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will tell people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many false witnesses who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more witnesses. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are witnesses of these things.”
- **43:07** “We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:17)
time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
- To be "on time" means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."
- The phrase "times and seasons" is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as "certain events happening in certain time periods." (See: doublet)

(See also: age, tribulation)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:10; 2:12; 5:16; 6:18)
to minister, ministry

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:
- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: serve, sacrifice)

Bible References:
- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:7; 4:12; 6:21)
tremble, stagger

Definition:
The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:


(See back to: Ephesians 6:5)
trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, sin, transgress)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:7; 2:1; 2:5)
tribulation, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
- “The Great Tribulation” is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus' second coming when God's wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: earth, teach, wrath)

Bible References:

- Mark 04:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:09
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G2347, G4423

(Go back to: Ephesians 3:13)
true, truth

Definition:
The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” means that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not true! You will not die.”
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are the Son of God.”
- **39:10** “I have come to earth to tell the truth about God. Everyone who loves the truth listens to me.” Pilate said, “What is truth?”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:13; 4:15; 4:21; 4:24; 4:25; 5:9; 6:14)
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:
To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:
- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:06 Then Jesus told a story about people who trusted in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:
- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:12)
Tychicus

Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

• Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
• Paul described him as “beloved” and “faithful.”
• Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, beloved, Colossae, Ephesus, faithful, good news, minister)

Bible References:

• 2 Timothy 04:11-13
• Colossians 04:09
• Titus 03:12

Word Data:

• Strong's: G5190

(Go back to: Ephesians 6:21)
understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

• The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
• To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
• While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
• Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
• Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

• Job 34:16-17
• Luke 02:47
• Luke 08:10
• Matthew 13:12
• Matthew 13:14
• Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ephesians 1:8; 3:4; 3:20; 4:18; 5:17)
vain, vanity

Definition:
The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as "vain" things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that there the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty,” “useless,” “hopeless,” “worthless,” “meaningless,” etc.

(See also: false god, worthy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1500, G2756, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

(Go back to: Ephesians 4:17; 5:6)
**walk, walked**

**Definition:**

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God's commands or God's ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God's commands” could be translated by “live by God's commands” or “obey God's commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

**Word Data:**


(**Go back to: Ephesians 2:2; 2:10; 4:1; 4:17; 5:2; 5:8; 5:15**)

481 / 500
**water**

**Definition:**

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(See also: Ephesians 5:26)
**will of God**

**Definition:**

The “will of God” refers to God's desires and plans.

- God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God's purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:1; 1:9; 1:11; 5:17; 6:6)
wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:18)
wise, wisdom

Definition:
The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:
- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 02:05 She also wanted to be wise, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- 18:01 When Solomon asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world.
- 23:09 Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- 45:01 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:8; 1:17; 3:10; 5:15)
**word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.”
- This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.” Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: Ephesians 5:26; 6:17)
work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: Ephesians 2:9; 2:10; 4:12; 5:11)
world, worldly

Definition:
The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: Ephesians 1:4; 2:2; 2:12)
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: honor)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

Word Data:


(See also: Ephesians 4:1)
**wrath, fury**

**Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

**Word Data:**


(See also: Ephesians 2:3; 4:31; 5:6)
Contributors

unfoldingWorld® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worges
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs

492 / 500
Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Steben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman
Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentuber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton
Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook
Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

**unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M.Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

**unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community